

*The Xerox DocuPrint  
N3225 and N4025  
Network Laser Printers*

**System  
Administrator Guide**

Copyright protection claimed includes all forms of matters of copyrightable materials and information now allowed by statutory or judicial law or hereinafter granted, including without limitation, material generated from the software programs which are displayed on the screen such as styles, templates, icons, screen displays, looks, etc.

Printed in the United States of America.

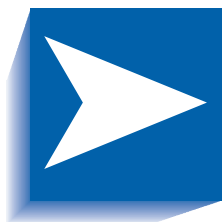
XEROX® and all Xerox product names and product numbers mentioned in this publication are registered trademarks of the Xerox Corporation. Other company trademarks are also acknowledged. PCL is a trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. MS, MS-DOS, Windows NT, Microsoft LAN Manager, Windows 95, Windows 98 and Windows 2000 are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Adobe® and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. TrueType is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. OS/2 is a trademark of International Business Machines. Sun and Solaris are trademarks of Sun Corporation.

This printer contains emulations of Hewlett-Packard PCL 5e and PCL 6 command languages (recognizes HP PCL 5e and PCL 6 commands) and processes these commands in a manner compatible with Hewlett Packard LaserJet printer products.

This product includes an implementation of LZW licensed under U.S. Patent 4.558.302.

Changes are periodically made to this document. Technical updates will be included in subsequent editions.

Copyright ©2000, Xerox Corporation. All Rights Reserved.



# Contents

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Configuring the Printer</b> .....	<b>1-1</b>
	<i>Using the Control Panel</i> .....	1-3
	<i>The Display</i> .....	1-4
	<i>The Indicator Lights</i> .....	1-5
	<i>The Keys</i> .....	1-6
	<i>Navigating the Menu System</i> .....	1-8
	<i>Menu Indicators</i> .....	1-9
	<i>Setting a Menu Option</i> .....	1-10
	<i>Control Panel Locks</i> .....	1-12
	<i>Using the Menu System</i> .....	1-13
	<i>Job Menu</i> .....	1-15
	<i>Password Menu</i> .....	1-17
	<i>Tray Menu</i> .....	1-20
	<i>PCL Menu</i> .....	1-28
	<i>System Menu</i> .....	1-34
	<i>Parallel Menu</i> .....	1-47
	<i>Serial Menu</i> .....	1-51
	<i>USB Menu</i> .....	1-55

<i>Ethernet Menu</i> .....	1-58
<i>Token Ring Menu</i> .....	1-72
<i>Novell Menu</i> .....	1-88
<i>Print Menu</i> .....	1-96
<i>Reset Menu</i> .....	1-101
<i>Automatic Tray Switching</i> .....	1-106
<i>Tray Sequence Default</i> .....	1-108
<i>Paper Handling Exception Conditions</i> .....	1-109
<i>Tray Sequence Rules</i> .....	1-111
<i>Tray Sequence Examples</i> .....	1-113
<i>Paper Size/Type Mismatch</i> .....	1-114
<i>Offsetting Output</i> .....	1-115
<i>Using Custom Paper Sizes</i> .....	1-117
<i>Using the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator</i> .....	1-120
<i>Mailbox Sorter Modes</i> .....	1-120
<i>Printing to the Mailbox/Collator</i> .....	1-120
<i>Duplex (Two-Sided) Printing</i> .....	1-121
<i>Print Orientation and Control Panel Settings</i> .....	1-122
<i>Using the Finisher</i> .....	1-123
<i>Features</i> .....	1-123
<i>Bin Capacity</i> .....	1-127
<i>Stapling Positions</i> .....	1-128
<i>Job Offsetting</i> .....	1-133
<i>Output Timeout</i> .....	1-134
<i>Paper Output Exception Conditions</i> .....	1-135

## **Chapter 2 Managing Printer Usage** ..... 2-1

<i>Using CentreWare DP</i> .....	2-2
<i>CentreWare Internet Services</i> .....	2-4
<i>Setup</i> .....	2-4
<i>PCL Emulation Printer Driver</i> .....	2-5
<i>PostScript Printer Drivers</i> .....	2-6

	<i>Driver Features</i> .....	2-7
	<i>Base Printer Fonts</i> .....	2-9
	<i>PostScript Fonts</i> .....	2-10
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b><i>Using the Hard Disk Drive and Flash Memory</i></b> .....	<b>3-1</b>
	<i>Hard Drive and Flash Memory Considerations</i> .....	3-2
	<i>Disk Initialization</i> .....	3-2
	<i>Flash Initialization</i> .....	3-2
	<i>Downloading Fonts, Forms and Macros</i> .....	3-3
	<i>Font Download Utility</i> .....	3-3
	<i>PCL 5e Driver</i> .....	3-4
	<i>FSDOWNLOAD Command</i> .....	3-5
	<i>FSDELETE Command</i> .....	3-8
	<i>Using the Hard Disk Drive for Secure and Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-9
	<i>Creating Secure Jobs</i> .....	3-9
	<i>Creating Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-11
	<i>Printing or Deleting Secure or Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-13
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b><i>Maintaining the Printer</i></b> .....	<b>4-1</b>
	<i>Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge</i> .....	4-2
	<i>Standard Configuration</i> .....	4-3
	<i>Duplex Configuration</i> .....	4-6
	<i>Installing the Maintenance Kit</i> .....	4-9
	<i>Replacing the Maintenance Kit</i> .....	4-10
	<i>Adding Staples to the Finisher</i> .....	4-19
	<i>Cleaning the Printer</i> .....	4-21
	<i>Exterior Cleaning</i> .....	4-22
	<i>Interior Cleaning</i> .....	4-23
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b><i>Troubleshooting</i></b> .....	<b>5-1</b>
	<i>Printer Operation Problems</i> .....	5-2
	<i>Control Panel Messages</i> .....	5-5
	<i>Memory Board (DIMM) Locations</i> .....	5-29

<i>Diagnostic LED Flash Sequences</i> .....	5-30
<i>Paper Jams</i> .....	5-32
<i>What Causes a Paper Jam?</i> .....	5-32
<i>Clearing Paper Jams</i> .....	5-32
<i>Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)</i> .....	5-33
<i>Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)</i> .....	5-35
<i>Clearing Area B</i> .....	5-37
<i>Clearing Area C</i> .....	5-37
<i>Clearing Area D</i> .....	5-38
<i>Clearing Area E</i> .....	5-39
<i>Clearing Area F</i> .....	5-39
<i>Clearing Area G</i> .....	5-40
<i>Clearing Area H</i> .....	5-40
<i>Clearing Tray 5</i> .....	5-41
<i>Clearing the Duplex Module</i> .....	5-42
<i>Print Quality Problems</i> .....	5-43

**Chapter 6** *Installing and Removing Printer Options* ..... 6-1

<i>Precautions</i> .....	6-3
<i>2,500 Sheet Feeder</i> .....	6-4
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-4
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-7
<i>Duplex Module</i> .....	6-9
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-9
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-14
<i>10-bin Mailbox/Collator</i> .....	6-18
<i>Installing (Console Configuration)</i> .....	6-18
<i>Removing (Console Configuration)</i> .....	6-22
<i>Installing (Tabletop Configuration)</i> .....	6-25
<i>Removing (Tabletop Configuration)</i> .....	6-29
<i>100 Envelope Feeder</i> .....	6-33
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-33

<i>Removing</i> .....	6-34
<i>Hard Disk Drive</i> .....	6-35
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-36
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-38
<i>Memory Modules</i> .....	6-40
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-41
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-43
<i>Interface Cards</i> .....	6-45
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-45
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-49
<i>Finisher</i> .....	6-51
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-51
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-59
<b>Appendix A <i>Printer Specifications</i></b> .....	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B <i>Unique Printer Commands</i></b> .....	<b>B-1</b>
<i>Overview</i> .....	B-2
<i>Paper Size Selection</i> .....	B-3
<i>Paper Type Selection</i> .....	B-5
<i>Input Tray Selection</i> .....	B-6
<i>Output Selection</i> .....	B-7
<i>PJL Commands</i> .....	B-8







# 1

## Configuring the Printer

<i>Using the Control Panel</i> .....	1-3
<i>The Display</i> .....	1-4
<i>The Indicator Lights</i> .....	1-5
<i>The Keys</i> .....	1-6
<i>Navigating the Menu System</i> .....	1-8
<i>Menu Indicators</i> .....	1-9
<i>Control Panel Locks</i> .....	1-12
<i>Setting a Menu Option</i> .....	1-10
<i>Using the Menu System</i> .....	1-13
<i>Job Menu</i> .....	1-15
<i>Password Menu</i> .....	1-17
<i>Tray Menu</i> .....	1-20
<i>PCL Menu</i> .....	1-28
<i>System Menu</i> .....	1-34
<i>Serial Menu</i> .....	1-51
<i>Ethernet Menu</i> .....	1-58
<i>Token Ring Menu</i> .....	1-72
<i>Novell Menu</i> .....	1-88
<i>Print Menu</i> .....	1-96
<i>Reset Menu</i> .....	1-101

<i>Automatic Tray Switching</i> .....	1-106
<i>Paper Handling Exception Conditions</i> .....	1-109
<i>Tray Sequence Rules</i> .....	1-111
<i>Tray Sequence Examples</i> .....	1-113
<i>Offsetting Output</i> .....	1-115
<i>Using Custom Paper Sizes</i> .....	1-117
<i>Using the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator</i> .....	1-120
<i>Duplex (Two-Sided) Printing</i> .....	1-121
<i>Print Orientation and Control Panel Settings</i> .....	1-122
<i>Using the Finisher</i> .....	1-123
<i>Features</i> .....	1-123
<i>Bin Capacity</i> .....	1-127
<i>Stapling Positions</i> .....	1-128
<i>Job Offsetting</i> .....	1-133
<i>Output Timeout</i> .....	1-134
<i>Paper Output Exception Conditions</i> .....	1-135

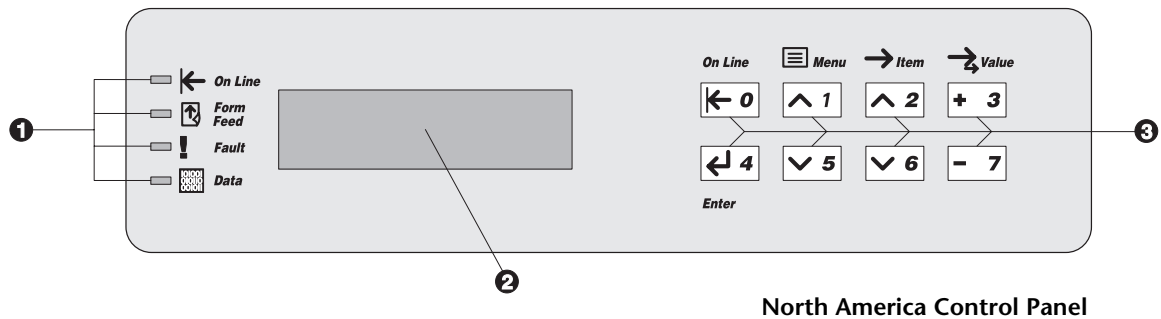
# Using the Control Panel

The Control Panel:

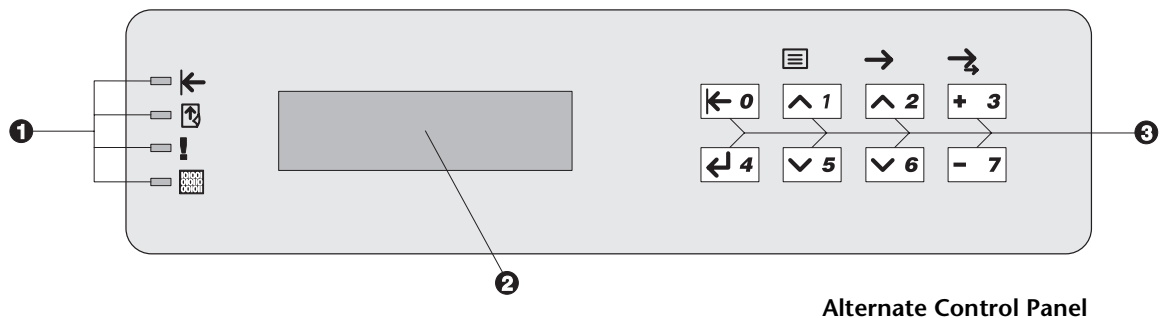
- Displays information about the status of the printer (or the job in process).
- Provides the means for changing printer settings and printer defaults to control how it operates.

As shown in Figure 3.1, your printer's Control Panel will either have icons and text, or icons only.

**Figure 1.1 Control Panel**



1. Indicator lights
2. Two-line by 16-character display
3. Control keys (8)



## The Display

The Control Panel's display performs two functions.

- It informs you of printer status conditions, such as when toner is low, when a paper tray is empty, when a job is in process, and so on. For example, when you turn on the printer, the display will show:



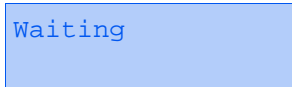
Ready

This message appears whenever the printer is online and ready to accept print jobs. The display will also show:



Processing...

when processing data, and:




Waiting

when waiting for more data.

- It presents a hierarchy of menu options and settings to configure and control the printer.

For example, when you press **Menu Up**  or **Menu Down** , you will see the following two-line message on the display:



Menus  
Item Menu








(such as **System Menu** or **Job Menu**)

See “Menu Indicators” (page 1-9) for more information on indicators.

## The Indicator Lights

The Control Panel contains four indicator lights. Table 1.1 describes the function of each indicator light.

**Table 1.1** Indicator lights and their functions

Light	Function
<b>On Line (Green)</b> 	Lights when the printer is online. Flashes when the printer is going from online to offline.
<b>Form Feed (Green)</b> 	<p>Lights when the printer experiences a form feed timeout—that is, when a PCL job has formatted a partial page, the printer is waiting for more data in order to continue processing the job, and a user-defined timeout period has expired with no new data arriving in the input buffer. This timeout applies to all ports. The timeout value may be set to any value between 5 and 300 seconds. The default value is 30 seconds.</p> <p>When lit, you can print a partial page by entering the Job menu, scrolling to the Form Feed item and pressing Enter . When not in the menu system, a partial page can be printed by pressing Enter . PostScript does not print partial pages and consequently the Form Feed light is not turned On.</p> <p>This light is turned Off when either an actual Form Feed character is received or the Form Feed function is invoked by pressing Enter  on the Job Menu when the Form Feed item is displayed.</p>
<b>Fault (Amber)</b> 	Lights whenever operator intervention is required in order to allow printing to continue.
<b>Data (Green)</b> 	Flashes to indicate that a print job is being processed by either PostScript, PCL or PJJ, or is being spooled to the disk (e.g., a proof or secure job). If data are not being processed, or either PostScript or PCL is processing a job but waiting for data (input buffer empty), this light is Off.

**The Keys** The Control Panel keypad consists of eight keys, identified with international symbols and/or labeled in English. The keys are also numbered 0 - 7.

Table 1.2 describes the function of each key.

**Table 1.2 Control Panel keys and their functions**









Key	Description
<b>On Line</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the printer is online and not in the menu system, takes the printer offline. All pages currently in the paper path are printed and then printing pauses until the printer is brought online again.</li> <li>• If the printer is online and in the menu system, exits the menu system.</li> <li>• If the printer is offline and not in the menu system, brings the printer online.</li> <li>• If the printer is offline and in the menu system, exits the menu system and brings the printer online.</li> </ul>
<b>Menu Up</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If not in the menu system, enters the menu system and displays the first menu.</li> <li>• If in the menu system, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the menus in order from top to bottom.</li> </ul>
<b>Menu Down</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If not in the menu system, enters the menu system and displays the last menu.</li> <li>• If in the menu system, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the menus in order from bottom to top.</li> </ul>
<b>Item Up</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If in the menu system, and an item is displayed, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the values in the current menu from bottom to top.</li> <li>• If not in the menu system, this key is ignored.</li> </ul>

Table 1.2 Page 1 of 2

Table 1.2 Control Panel keys and their functions (continued)



Key	Description
<b>Item Down</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If in the menu system, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the items in the current menu from top to bottom.</li> <li>• If not in the menu system, this key is ignored.</li> </ul>
<b>Value Up</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If in the menu system, and an item is displayed, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the values for the current item from bottom to top and displays the default value for the current item. When setting a numeric value, increases the value by the step amount. It is subject to auto-repeat if held down more than 1 second.</li> <li>• If not in the Menu system and a paper mismatch condition does not exist, this key is ignored.</li> <li>• If a paper mismatch condition exists, scrolls through the alternate paper that may be used instead of the requested paper.</li> </ul>
<b>Value Down</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If in the menu system, and an item is displayed, causes the Control Panel to scroll through the values for the current item from top to bottom and displays the default value for the current item. When setting a numeric value, decreases the value by the step amount. It is subject to auto-repeat if held down more than 1 second.</li> <li>• If not in the Menu system and a paper mismatch condition does not exist, this key is ignored.</li> <li>• If a paper mismatch condition exists, scrolls through the alternate paper that may be used instead of the requested paper.</li> </ul>
<b>Enter</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the current display is a value for an item, causes the value to be entered as the default value for this item.</li> <li>• If the current display is an action to be invoked (e.g., “PCL Font List”, “Restart Printer”), causes the action to occur.</li> <li>• If not in the menu system and the FormFeed LED indicates that a partial page exists, causes an implied PCL reset and the partial page is printed.</li> <li>• If a paper mismatch condition exists and a request to use an alternate paper is displayed, causes printing on paper currently loaded in the selected tray (Print Anyway).</li> </ul>
Table 1.2 Page 2 of 2	

## Navigating the Menu System

---

The Control Panel provides access to the Main Menu and its submenus. Main Menu options are:

- Job Menu
- Password Menu (when the Hard Disk Drive is installed)
- Tray Menu
- PCL Menu
- System Menu
- Parallel Menu
- Serial Menu
- USB Menu
- Ethernet Menu
- Token Ring Menu (requires the Token Ring Card)
- Novell Menu
- Print Menu
- Reset Menu





Press **Menu Up**  or **Menu Down**  to access the Main Menu. Each of the submenus may have other submenus, settings, actions or functions.



## Menu Indicators

Two menu indicators (= and \*) are used to furnish information about menus and settings. The purpose of each indicator is described in Table 1.3 below.

**Table 1.3 Indicators found in the Control Panel Menu systems**

Indicator	Purpose	Example
=	<p>This indicator only appears after options which take a specific setting—it indicates that a value or setting follows the option.</p> <p>The example at the right tells you that Language is an option that takes a specific setting. One setting for the Language option is Français. Another setting is English. (The list of available settings is displayed one setting at a time on the bottom line of the display as you press Value Up  or Value Down .)</p>	<p><b>Language</b> = <b>Français</b></p>
*	<p>This indicator identifies the current value setting.</p> <p>The example at the right tells you that Language is currently set to English.</p> <p>Pressing Value Up  or Value Down  scrolls through the possible values.</p>	<p><b>Language</b> = <b>English</b> *</p>

## Setting a Menu Option

To set an option or to invoke a function, follow the steps below:

- 1 Press **Menu Up** or **Menu Down** to scroll through the available submenus until you locate the one you want.

You will see:

```
Menu  
Menu Name
```

where *Menu Name* is the current submenu displayed.

- 2 Press **Item Up** or **Item Down** to scroll through the items of the submenu (all submenus except the Password Menu).

You will see:

```
Menu Name  
Item Name
```

where *Item Name* is the current item displayed. For the Job, Print, Service and Reset (with the exception of the Language option) Menus, the bottom line of the display indicates the action to be taken (e.g., Config. Sheet or PCL Font List).

- 3 Press **Value Up** or **Value Down** to select the appropriate value for this item.

You will see:

Item Name	=
Current Value*	

If a list of many values exists (e.g., one through 99 for number of copies), you can scroll quickly by holding down **Value Up** or **Value Down**.

When you see the value you want, press **Enter** to accept it.

- 4 If necessary, repeat Step 2 and Step 3 to go through other menus, options, actions, functions and values.

After you press **Enter** to accept a value, the menu will display:

Menu Name
Item Name

You may continue to work in the Menu system by repeating the steps above, or you may exit and return to normal operation by pressing **Online**.



*If you press **Online** at any time prior to pressing **Enter**, the new value will not be saved and the Menu system is exited.*



*The printer automatically exits the Menu system after 60 seconds of inactivity (i.e., no key has been pressed).*

## **Control Panel Locks**

Some Control Panel menus can be locked to prevent unauthorized access to critical system parameters. If you scroll to a locked menu, pressing either Item key causes the menu name to appear on the top line of the display and “Menu Locked” to appear on the second line.

The following menus cannot be locked:

- Job Menu
- Password Menu
- Tray Menu
- Print Menu
- Reset Menu

If you do not want users to have access to the Reset Menu, power OFF and power ON the printer.

## Using the Menu System

---

The Main Menu is a system of submenus, each containing options designed to configure the printer for your environment. The Main Menu hierarchy is depicted in Table 1.4.



*In this chapter, a boldfaced value followed by an asterisk (\*) indicates the factory default for that value. See the section “Reset Menu” (page 1-101) for information on how to revert to factory settings.*

---

Table 1.4 Main Menu hierarchy

Main Menu	Hierarchy and Factory Settings
Job Menu	See "Job Menu Items" (page 1-15).
Password Menu <sup>1</sup>	See "Password Menu" (page 1-17).
Tray Menu	See "Tray Menu" (page 1-20).
PCL Menu	See "PCL Menu" (page 1-28).
System Menu	See "System Menu" (page 1-34).
Parallel Menu	See "Parallel Menu" (page 1-47).
Serial Menu <sup>2</sup>	See "Serial Menu" (page 1-51).
USB Menu	See "USB Menu" (page 1-55).
Ethernet Menu <sup>3</sup>	See "Ethernet Menu" (page 1-58).
Token Ring Menu <sup>4</sup>	See "Token Ring Menu" (page 1-72).
Novell Menu	See "Novell Menu" (page 1-88).
Print Menu	See "Print Menu" (page 1-96).
Reset Menu <sup>5</sup>	See "Reset Menu" (page 1-101).

<sup>1</sup> Appears only when the Hard Drive is installed.

<sup>2</sup> Appears only when the Serial Interface option is installed.

<sup>3</sup> Does not appear when the Token Ring Card is installed.

<sup>4</sup> Appears only when the Token Ring Card is installed.

<sup>5</sup> Appears only when the **On Line** and **Enter** keys are held down simultaneously at Power On.

## Job Menu

The Job Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.5.

**Table 1.5 Job Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
<b>Job Menu</b>	Allows you to cancel the job currently processed by PCL or PostScript, or to force a form feed on a partially formatted job in PCL.	
	Menu Items	Description
	<b>Cancel Job</b>	Cancels the job currently printing.
	<b>Form Feed</b>	Causes a partial PCL page to be ejected when the Form Feed LED is on.
	<b>Restart Printer</b>	Re-boots the printer as if the power was cycled, but bypasses power on diagnostics.

Refer to Table 1.6 on page 1-16 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.6 Job Menu functions



















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Cancel Job</b> Cancel the PostScript or PCL job currently printing.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Job Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Job Menu</b> <b>Cancel Job</b>
	3. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>Form Feed</b> Force a form feed on a partially formatted job in PCL.  <i>This function is also available from the Print Menu.</i>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Job Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Job Menu</b> <b>Form Feed</b>
	3. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>Restart Printer</b> Reinitialize the printer as if the power was cycled, but bypassing power on diagnostics. The available values are: Yes No*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Job Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Job Menu</b> <b>Restart Printer</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Restart Printer</b> <b>Yes</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	<b>[Startup Messages]</b>
	5. When the action is complete, you will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.5



## Password Menu

The Password Menu (available only when the Hard Disk Drive is installed). Its available items are described in Table 1.7.

**Table 1.7 Password Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
Password Menu	Allows you to print or delete proof jobs or secure jobs.	
	Menu Items	Description
	All Jobs Print	Print all jobs sent with a specific password.
	<i>Filename n Print</i>	Print one or more jobs out of several sent with a specific password.
	All Jobs Delete	Delete all jobs sent with a specific password.
<i>Filename n Delete</i>	Delete one or more jobs out of several sent with a specific password.	

Refer to Table 1.8 on page 1-18 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.8 Password Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>All Jobs Print</b>  Print all jobs or one job sent with a specific password.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Password Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6. You will see:	Enter Password _xxx
	3. Enter four-digit password using the numbers on the Control Panel keys. You will see:	All Jobs Print
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ready
<b>Job n Print</b>  Print one or more jobs out of several sent with a specific password.  A job with a name assigned to it will replace the "Job n" with that name.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Password Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6. You will see:	Enter Password _xxx
	3. Enter four-digit password using the numbers on the Control Panel keys. You will see:	All Jobs Print
	4. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Job n Print
	5. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	All Jobs Print
	6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until you have printed all the jobs you wish to print. When done, press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.8 Page 1 of 2

Table 1.8 Password Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>All Jobs Delete</b>  Delete all jobs or one job sent with a specific password.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Password Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ . You will see:	Enter Password _xxx
	3. Enter four-digit password using the numbers on the Control Panel keys. You will see:	All Jobs Print
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	All Jobs Delete
	5. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Job n Delete</b>  Delete one or more jobs out of several sent with a specific password.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Password Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ . You will see:	Enter Password _xxx
	3. Enter four-digit password using the numbers on the Control Panel keys. You will see:	All Jobs Print
	4. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Job n Print
	5. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Job n Delete
	6. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	All Jobs Print
	7. Repeat Steps 4 to 6 until you have deleted all the jobs you wish to delete. When done, press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.8 Page 2 of 2

## Tray Menu

The Tray Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.9.

**Table 1.9** Tray Menu Items

Menu	Description	
Tray Menu	Allows you to access tray settings for PCL and PostScript jobs.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Envelope Size <sup>1</sup>	Defines the envelope size that is loaded in the envelope feeder.
	Envelope Type <sup>1</sup>	Defines the envelope type that is loaded in the envelope feeder.
	MBF Size <sup>1</sup>	Defines the paper size that is loaded in the MBF.
	MBF Type <sup>1</sup>	Defines the paper type that is loaded in the MBF.
	Tray 1 Type	Defines the type of paper installed in Tray 1.
	Tray 2 Type	Defines the type of paper installed in Tray 2.
	Tray 3 Type <sup>2</sup>	Defines the type of paper installed in Tray 3.
	Tray 4 Type <sup>2</sup>	Defines the type of paper installed in Tray 4.
	Tray 5 Type <sup>2</sup>	Defines the type of paper installed in Tray 5.
	Tray Sequence	Defines the order in which trays are used when more than one tray meets the size and type requirements.
Custom Size	Defines the paper size that is used in formatting pages printed from the MBF when it is set to custom size (which overrides the MBF standard sizes).	

<sup>1</sup> Envelope and MBF size and type are mutually exclusive because the Envelope Feeder replaces the Multi-sheet Bypass Feeder.

<sup>2</sup> Appears only when the 2,500 Sheet Feeder is installed.

Refer to Table 1.10 on page 1-21 for step-by-step procedures.

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Envelope Size</b></p> <p>Set the paper size that is loaded in the Envelope Feeder. The available values are:</p> <p>Com10(4.1x9.5)*DL(110x220)  C5(162x229)      Monarc(3.8x7.5)  Custom</p> <p>Com10 is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <b>Inches</b>.  DL is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <b>Millimeters</b>.</p> <p>This item must be entered manually because the Envelope Feeder does not have paper size sensing.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Tray Menu Envelope Size
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Envelope Size = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Envelope Size
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Envelope Type</b></p> <p>Set the type that is loaded in the Envelope Feeder. The available values are:</p> <p>Plain**      Preprinted</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Tray Menu Envelope Type
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Envelope Type = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Envelope Type
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.10 Page 1 of 7

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)

















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display																		
<p><b>MBF Size</b></p> <p>Set the paper size that is loaded in the 50 Sheet Multi Bypass Feeder (MBF). The available values are:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Statmt(5.5x8.5)</td> <td>A3(297x420)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exec(7.25x10.5)</td> <td>B5-JIS(182x257)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b></td> <td>B4-JIS(257x364)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Legal(8.5x14)</td> <td>Com10(4.1x9.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Folio(8.5x13)</td> <td>C5(162x229)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ledger(11x17)</td> <td>DL(110x220)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A6(105x148)</td> <td>Monarc(3.8x7.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A5(148x210)</td> <td>Custom</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A4(210x297)</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p><i>Letter</i> is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <i>Inches</i>. <i>A4</i> is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <i>Millimeters</i>.</p> <p>This item must be entered manually because the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder does not have paper size sensing.</p>	Statmt(5.5x8.5)	A3(297x420)	Exec(7.25x10.5)	B5-JIS(182x257)	<b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b>	B4-JIS(257x364)	Legal(8.5x14)	Com10(4.1x9.5)	Folio(8.5x13)	C5(162x229)	Ledger(11x17)	DL(110x220)	A6(105x148)	Monarc(3.8x7.5)	A5(148x210)	Custom	A4(210x297)		<p>1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>Menus Tray Menu</p>
	Statmt(5.5x8.5)	A3(297x420)																		
	Exec(7.25x10.5)	B5-JIS(182x257)																		
	<b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b>	B4-JIS(257x364)																		
	Legal(8.5x14)	Com10(4.1x9.5)																		
Folio(8.5x13)	C5(162x229)																			
Ledger(11x17)	DL(110x220)																			
A6(105x148)	Monarc(3.8x7.5)																			
A5(148x210)	Custom																			
A4(210x297)																				
<p>2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>Tray Menu MBF Size</p>																			
<p>3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>MBF Size = New Value</p>																			
<p>4. Press <b>Enter</b> . You will see:</p>	<p>Tray Menu MBF Size</p>																			
<p>5. Press <b>On Line</b> . You will see:</p>	<p>Ready</p>																			
<p><b>MBF Type</b></p> <p>Set the type of paper that is loaded in the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder (MBF). The available values are:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		<p>1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>Menus Tray Menu</p>		
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																		
	Preprinted	Cardstock																		
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																		
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																		
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																			
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																			
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																			
Recycled																				
<p>2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>Tray Menu MBF Type</p>																			
<p>3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:</p>	<p>MBF Type = New Value</p>																			
<p>4. Press <b>Enter</b> . You will see:</p>	<p>Tray Menu MBF Type</p>																			
<p>5. Press <b>On Line</b> . You will see:</p>	<p>Ready</p>																			

Table 1.10 Page 2 of 7

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display																
<b>Tray 1 Type</b> Set the type of paper that is loaded in Tray 1. The available values are:  <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																
	Preprinted	Cardstock																
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																	
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																	
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																	
Recycled																		
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Tray Menu Tray 1 Type																
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Tray 1 Type = New Value																
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray 1 Type																
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready																
<b>Tray 2 Type</b> Set the type of paper that is loaded in Tray 2. The available values are:  <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																
	Preprinted	Cardstock																
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																	
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																	
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																	
Recycled																		
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Tray Menu Tray 2 Type																
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Tray 2 Type = New Value																
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray 2 Type																
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready																

Table 1.10 Page 3 of 7

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display																
<b>Tray 3 Type</b> Set the type of paper that is loaded in Tray 3. The available values are:  <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> (Available only when the optional 2,500 Sheet Feeder is installed.)	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																
	Preprinted	Cardstock																
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																	
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																	
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																	
Recycled																		
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Tray Menu Tray 3 Type																
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Tray 3 Type = New Value																
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray 3 Type																
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready																
<b>Tray 4 Type</b> Set the type of paper that is loaded in Tray 4. The available values are:  <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> (Available only when the optional 2,500 Sheet Feeder is installed.)	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																
	Preprinted	Cardstock																
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																	
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																	
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																	
Recycled																		
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Tray Menu Tray 4 Type																
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Tray 4 Type = New Value																
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray 4 Type																
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready																

Table 1.10 Page 4 of 7



Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display																
<b>Tray 5 Type</b> Set the type of paper that is loaded in Tray 5. The available values are:  <table border="0"> <tr> <td><b>Plain*</b></td> <td>Color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Preprinted</td> <td>Cardstock</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Letterhead</td> <td>User Type 1 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transparency</td> <td>User Type 2 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prepunched</td> <td>User Type 3 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labels</td> <td>User Type 4 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bond</td> <td>User Type 5 (if loaded)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Recycled</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> (Available only when the optional 2,500 Sheet Feeder is installed.)	<b>Plain*</b>	Color	Preprinted	Cardstock	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)	Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)	Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)	Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)	Recycled		1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	<b>Plain*</b>	Color																
	Preprinted	Cardstock																
	Letterhead	User Type 1 (if loaded)																
	Transparency	User Type 2 (if loaded)																
Prepunched	User Type 3 (if loaded)																	
Labels	User Type 4 (if loaded)																	
Bond	User Type 5 (if loaded)																	
Recycled																		
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Tray Menu Tray 5 Type																
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Tray 5 Type = New Value																
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray 5 Type																
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready																

Table 1.10 Page 5 of 7

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)










Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Tray Sequence</b></p> <p>Set the sequence of trays used by the printer when tray switching is required. The available values are:</p> <p>Off            MBF-1  <b>MBF-1-2</b><sup>†</sup>            MBF-4-5            MBF-4-5-1            MBF-4-5-1-2  <b>MBF-4-5-1-2-3</b><sup>††</sup>  <b>1-2</b><sup>†††</sup>            1-2-3            4-5-1            4-5-1-2  <b>4-5-1-2-3</b><sup>††††</sup>            4-1            4-1-2            4-1-2-3</p> <p><sup>†</sup> Default when no accessories are installed.  <sup>††</sup> Default with High Capacity Feeder installed.  <sup>†††</sup> Default with Envelope Feeder installed.  <sup>††††</sup> Default with Envelope Feeder and High Capacity Feeder installed.</p> <p>The first tray of a sequence is used until it runs out of paper, at which time the next tray in the sequence is used (if it has the correct paper size and type). See the section Automatic Tray Switching 1-106 for rules and examples of usage.</p> <p> Only installed tray options will appear. If the value is set to <i>Off</i>, the printer will print from the requested tray only, even if the other trays contain the correct stock.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Tray Menu Tray Sequence
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Tray Sequence = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Tray Menu Tray Sequence
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.10 Page 6 of 7

Table 1.10 Tray Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display																
<p><b>Custom Size</b></p> <p>Set the paper size to be used for formatting custom paper when MBF size is set to <b>Custom</b>. The available values are:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Statmt(5.5x8.5)</td> <td>A4(210x297)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exec(7.25x10.5)</td> <td>A3(297x420)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b></td> <td>B5-JIS(182x257)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Legal(8.5x14)</td> <td>B4-JIS(257x364)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Folio(8.5x13)</td> <td>Com10(4.1x9.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ledger(11x17)</td> <td>C5(162x229)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A6(105x148)</td> <td>DL(110x220)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A5(148x210)</td> <td>Monarc(3.8x7.5)</td> </tr> </table> <p><i>Letter</i> is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <i>Inches</i>.  <i>A4</i> is the default when the System menu item Defaults is set to <i>Millimeters</i>.</p>	Statmt(5.5x8.5)	A4(210x297)	Exec(7.25x10.5)	A3(297x420)	<b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b>	B5-JIS(182x257)	Legal(8.5x14)	B4-JIS(257x364)	Folio(8.5x13)	Com10(4.1x9.5)	Ledger(11x17)	C5(162x229)	A6(105x148)	DL(110x220)	A5(148x210)	Monarc(3.8x7.5)	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Tray Menu
	Statmt(5.5x8.5)	A4(210x297)																
	Exec(7.25x10.5)	A3(297x420)																
	<b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b>	B5-JIS(182x257)																
	Legal(8.5x14)	B4-JIS(257x364)																
Folio(8.5x13)	Com10(4.1x9.5)																	
Ledger(11x17)	C5(162x229)																	
A6(105x148)	DL(110x220)																	
A5(148x210)	Monarc(3.8x7.5)																	
2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Tray Menu Custom Size																	
3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	Custom Size = New Value																	
4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Tray Menu Custom Size																	
5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready																	

Table 1.10 Page 7 of 7

## PCL Menu

The PCL Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.11.

**Table 1.11 PCL Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
PCL Menu	Allows you to establish the default configuration for the printer when printing PCL emulation jobs.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Font Number	Sets the default font in PCL.
	Pitch	Sets the pitch of the default font in PCL. Appears only when the default font already selected is a scalable fixed pitch font.
	Point Size	Sets the point size of the default font in PCL. Appears only when the default font already selected is a scalable proportional spaced font.
	Symbol Set	Sets the default font symbol set used in PCL.
	Orientation	Sets the default orientation (portrait, landscape) used in PCL.
	Form Length	Sets the default number of lines per page used in PCL.
	Line Terminat	Enables the setting of an additional carriage return after every line feed appearing in PCL text.

Refer to Table 1.12 on page 1-29 for step-by-step procedures.

Table 1.12 PCL Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Font Number</b></p> <p>Set the default font in PCL. The available values are:</p> <p>0* - 999</p> <p>These numbers are assigned by the printer and should not be confused with the user defined ID numbers associated with font downloading (creation).</p> <p>The font number changes incrementally to the next valid ID each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{-7}</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{-7}</math> causes continuous scrolling through the font numbers.</p> <p>(Accelerated scrolling may be affected by the time taken to ascertain the next possible value.)</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus PCL Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	PCL Menu Font Number
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{-7}$ until you see:	Font Number = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	PCL Menu Font Number
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.12 Page 1 of 5

Table 1.12 PCL Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Pitch</b></p> <p>Set the pitch of the PCL default font (when the PCL default font is a scalable fixed pitch font). The available values are:</p> <p>.44 - 99.99 (10.00*)</p> <p>The pitch changes incrementally by .01 each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> causes continuous scrolling through the Pitch values.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus PCL Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	PCL Menu Pitch
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Pitch = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	PCL Menu Pitch
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Point Size</b></p> <p>Set the point size of the PCL default font (when the PCL default font is a scalable proportional font). The available values are:</p> <p>4.00 - 999.75 (12.00*)</p> <p>The point size changes incrementally by .25 each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> causes continuous scrolling through the point sizes.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus PCL Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	PCL Menu Point Size
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Point Size = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	PCL Menu Point Size
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.12 Page 2 of 5

Table 1.12 PCL Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Symbol Set</b> Set the default font symbol set used in PCL. The available values are:  Desktop <b>PC-8*</b> ISO L1        PC-8 DN ISO L2        PC-8 Tk ISO L5        PC-850 ISO L6        PC-852 ISO-4         PC Cyrillic ISO-6         Pi Font ISO-11        PS Math ISO-15        PS Text ISO-17        Roman-8 ISO-21        Vn Int'l. ISO-60        Vn Math ISO-69        Vn US ISO-Latin Cyr Win 3.0 Legal         Win L1 Math-8        Win L2 Ms Publ.      Win L5  The symbol set is a collection of characters available for a font, including uppercase and lowercase alphabets, punctuation marks, and special characters such as open and close quotation marks or international characters.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>PCL Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Symbol Set</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Symbol Set</b> = <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Symbol Set</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.12 Page 3 of 5

Table 1.12 PCL Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Orientation</b></p> <p>Set the default orientation used in PCL.</p> <p>The available values are:</p> <p><b>Portrait*</b> <b>Landscape</b></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>PCL Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Orientation</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Orientation =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Orientation</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<p><b>Form Length</b></p> <p>Set the number of lines per page used in PCL. The available values are: 005 - 128 (60* USA) (64* Europe)</p> <p>Form Length is automatically adjusted when Paper Size is changed. For example, setting Paper Size to <b>A4</b> adjusts Form Length to <b>64</b> automatically. Setting Paper Size to <b>Letter</b> adjusts Form Length to <b>60</b>. Whenever Paper Size is changed, Form Length is recalculated using the formula: Form Length = ((logical page length in inches - 1 inch) * 6).</p> <p>The Form Length value changes incrementally by 1 each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> causes continuous scrolling through the Form Length values.</p> <p>The value of this setting after performing a Reset Menus depends on the value of the Defaults setting.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>PCL Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Form Length</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	<b>Form Length =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	<b>PCL Menu</b> <b>Form Length</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.12 Page 4 of 5



Table 1.12 PCL Menu functions (continued)









Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Line Terminat.</b></p> <p>Cause a Carriage Return to be added after every Line Feed appearing in the PCL text. The available values are:</p> <p>Off* On</p> <p>This setting enables the &lt;LF&gt;=&lt;CR&gt;&lt;LF&gt; line termination mode in PCL as the default.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus PCL Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	PCL Menu Line Terminat.
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Line Terminat. = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	PCL Menu Line Terminat.
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.12 Page 5 of 5

## System Menu

The System Menu options and its available items are described in Table 1.13.

**Table 1.13 System Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
System Menu	Allows you to set general printer features.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Language	Sets the language used for Control Panel display messages and generated reports.
	Paper Size	Sets the default paper size used in PCL.
	Paper Type	Sets the default paper type used in PostScript and PCL.
	Page Policy	Allows the printer to automatically select an alternate paper size and/or type if the requested size and/or type is not loaded.
	Policy Timeout	Directs the printer as to how long to wait before taking the action defined by the setting of the Page Policy item.
	Print Quantity	Sets multiple copies of each page (not collated sets).
	Duplex	Enables or disables duplex printing for PostScript and PCL jobs (and appears only when the optional duplex unit is installed).
	Draft Mode	Enables or disables a reduced toner mode for draft printing.

Table 1.13 Page 1 of 2

Table 1.13 System Menu Items (continued)

Menu	Description	
System Menu (continued)	<b>Edge-to-Edge</b>	Enables or disables edge-to-edge printing in PCL.
	<b>XIE</b>	Sets the default Xerox Image Enhancement (XIE) mode.
	<b>Resolution</b>	Sets the default resolution for PCL and PostScript jobs.
	<b>Output Timeout</b>	Determines how many seconds the system will wait after a bin is filled before directing output to an alternate bin.
	<b>Output Offset</b>	Enables or disables alternately offsetting output from jobs.
	<b>Output Dest</b>	Sets the default paper output destination for PCL and PostScript jobs.
	<b>Staple Mode</b>	Selects the default staple position (when the Finisher is installed.)
	<b>Print PS Errors</b>	Controls the use of the built-in PostScript error handler or debugger.
	<b>Power Saver</b>	Defines a period of inactivity after which time the printer will enter a low power state.
	<b>Config Legal/B4</b>	Selects which of these sizes will be recognized by the tray size switches.
	<b>Config Exec/B5</b>	Selects which of these sizes will be recognized by the tray size switches.
<b>Defaults</b>	Sets the type of factory defaults to use when a "Factory Default" is performed.	

Table 1.13 Page 2 of 2

Refer to Table 1.14 on page 1-36 for step-by-step instructions.

**Table 1.14 System Menu functions**

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Language</b></p> <p>Set the spoken language used for Control Panel display messages, Configuration Sheets, PCL Font Lists, etc.</p> <p>The available values are:</p> <p>Deutsch  <b>English*</b>                      Español                      Français                      Italiano                      Português (BRA)                      Russian</p> <p>The value of this setting is not affected by performing a “Factory Default” reset; therefore it does not have a default value apart from the initial value of <i>English</i> that is used when the printer is powered up for the first time.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	System Menu Language
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	Language = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	System Menu Language
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready (In the old language until a Restart is invoked)

Table 1.14 Page 1 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Paper Size</b> Set the default paper size used in PCL. The available values are:  Statmt(5.5x8.5)    A4(210x297) Exec(7.25x10.5)    A3(297x420) <b>Letter(8.5x11)*</b> B5-JIS(182x257) Legal(8.5x14)    B4-JIS(257x364) Folio(8.5x13)    Com10(4.1x9.5) Ledger(11x17)    C5(162x229) A6(105x148)    DL(110x220) A5(148x210)    Monarc(3.8x7.5)  <i>Letter</i> is the inches default. <i>A4</i> is the mm default.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	System Menu Paper Size
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Paper Size    = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	System Menu Paper Size
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Paper Type</b> Set the default paper type used in PostScript and PCL. The available values are:  <b>Plain*</b> Color Preprinted    Cardstock Letterhead    User Type 1 (if loaded) Transparency    User Type 2 (if loaded) Prepunched    User Type 3 (if loaded) Labels    User Type 4 (if loaded) Bond    User Type 5 (if loaded) Recycled	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	System Menu Paper Type
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Paper Type    = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	System Menu Paper Type
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 2 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Page Policy</b> Allow the printer to automatically select an alternate paper size and/or type if the requested size and/or type is not loaded. The available values are:  <b>Off*</b> Ignore Type Ignore Size    Ignore Size/Type  If the requested paper is not loaded before the time specified by the Page Timeout value, enabling this menu option causes the printer to ignore either the size requested, the type requested, or both. Trays are searched in the order defined by the Tray Sequence item in the Tray Menu.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	System Menu Page Policy
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Page Policy        = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	System Menu Page Policy
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Policy Timeout</b> Direct the printer how long to wait before taking the action defined by the setting of the Page Policy item. The available values are:  300 180 120 60 30* 0	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	System Menu Page Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Page Timeout        = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	System Menu Page Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 3 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Print Quantity</b></p> <p>Set multiple copies of each page. The available values are:</p> <p>1* - 999</p> <p>The number of copies changes incrementally by 1 each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\boxed{+ 3}</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\boxed{- 7}</math> causes continuous scrolling through the number of copies.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	System Menu Copies
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Copies = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	System Menu Copies
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Duplex</b></p> <p>Enable or disable duplex printing for PostScript and PCL jobs. The available values are:</p> <p><b>Off*</b> Long Edge Short Edge</p> <p>This item is only available when the optional Duplex Module is installed.</p> <p>For information on the use of Long Edge and Short Edge printing, see "Duplex (Two-Sided) Printing" (page 1-121).</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	System Menu Duplex
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Duplex = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	System Menu Duplex
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 4 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)


















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Draft Mode</b></p> <p>Enable or disable the reduced toner mode for draft printing. The available values are:</p> <p><b>Off*</b> On</p> <p>When set to <b>On</b>, the printer automatically reduces the amount of toner by two-thirds (and prints a draft-quality output).</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Draft Mode
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Draft Mode      = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Draft Mode
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Edge-to-Edge</b></p> <p>Enable or disable edge-to-edge printing in PCL. The available values are:</p> <p><b>Off*</b> On</p> <p> Although the printer can address edge-to-edge, there is a 4 mm border on all edges where print quality cannot be guaranteed.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Edge-to-Edge
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Edge-to-Edge      = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Edge-to-Edge
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 5 of 11



Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)










Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>XIE</b> Set the default Xerox Image (resolution) Enhancement mode. The available values are: Off* On  <i>XIE functions only when Resolution is set to 600 x 600 and Draft Mode is set to Off.</i>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> or <b>Menu Down</b> until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> or <b>Item Down</b> until you see:	System Menu XIE
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> or <b>Value Down</b> until you see:	XIE                    = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> . You will see:	System Menu XIE
	5. Press <b>Online</b> . You will see:	Ready
<b>Resolution</b> Select the default resolution in PostScript and PCL emulations. The available values are: 600x600* 1200 Quality PCL 5e is always set to 600x600 regardless of the value for this item.  <i>Control Panel settings for this feature may be overridden by the settings in the printer driver.</i>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Resolution
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Resolution           = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Resolution
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 6 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)


















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Output Timeout</b> Determine whether the system will wait after a bin is filled or will direct output to an alternate bin. The available values are:  Off On*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Output Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Output Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Output Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready
<b>Output Offset</b> Enable or disable alternately offsetting output from jobs. The available values are:  Off* On   <i>The Face-up Bin and the Mailbox/Collator do not have offset capability.</i>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Output Offset
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Output Offset = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Output Offset
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 7 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)



















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Output Dest</b></p> <p>Set the default paper output destination. The available values are:</p> <p><b>Face Down Bin*</b> Face Up Bin Mailbox 1 - Mailbox 10 Sorter</p> <p> Mailbox bins 1 through 10 are only available when the optional 10-bin Mailbox/Collator is installed.</p> <p>For more information on printing to the Mailbox/Collator, see "Using the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator" (page 2-29).</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Output Dest
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Output Dest = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	System Menu Output Dest
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Staple Mode</b></p> <p>Set the default staple position.</p> <p>The available values are:</p> <p><b>Off*</b> Position 1 (Front) Position 2 (Rear) Dual (Two in middle)</p> <p> This item appears only when the Finisher is installed.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	System Menu Staple Mode
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Staple Mode = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Staple Mode Output Dest
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 8 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Print PS Errors</b> Print an error page when a PostScript error occurs. The available values are:  <b>Off*</b> <b>On</b>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>PostScript Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>PostScript Menu</b> <b>Print Errors</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>Print Errors =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>PostScript Menu</b> <b>Print Errors</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>Config Legal/B4</b> Specify whether Legal or B4-JIS will be recognized by the tray size switches. The available values are:  <b>Legal*</b> <b>B4-JIS</b>  <i>Legal</i> is the inches default. <i>B4-JIS</i> is the millimeters default.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>System Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>System Menu</b> <b>Config Legal/B4</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>Config Legal/B4 =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>System Menu</b> <b>Config Legal/B4</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.14 Page 9 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Config Exec/B5</b> Specify whether Exec or B5-JIS will be recognized by the tray size switches. The available values are: <b>Exec*</b> B5-JIS <i>Exec</i> is the inches default. <i>B5-JIS</i> is the millimeters default.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	System Menu Config Exec/B5
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Config Exec/B5 = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	System Menu Config Exec/B5
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Power Saver</b> Specify a period of inactivity after which time the printer will enter a low power state. The available values are: Off (never enter Power Saver mode) 15 30 <b>60*</b> 90 120 180	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus System Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	System Menu Power Saver
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Power Saver = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	System Menu Power Saver
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.14 Page 10 of 11

Table 1.14 System Menu functions (continued)










Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Defaults</b></p> <p>Control the default paper size settings in various menus. The available values are:</p> <p>Inches* Millimeters</p> <p>When set to <i>Inches</i>, the default Paper Size value is set to <i>Letter</i>; the default MBF Size is set to <i>Letter</i>; the default Custom Size is set to <i>Letter</i>; and the default Envelope Size is set to <i>Com10</i>.</p> <p>When set to <i>Millimeters</i>, the default Paper Size value is set to <i>A4</i>; the default MBF Size is set to <i>A4</i>; the default Custom Size is set to <i>A4</i>; and the default Envelope Size is set to <i>DL</i>.</p> <p>The default Form Length value in the PCL Menu is adjusted to match the Paper Size.</p> <p> <i>The Defaults setting is not changed by resetting to factory defaults.</i></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>System Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	<b>System Menu</b> <b>Defaults</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	<b>Defaults</b> = <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	<b>System Menu</b> <b>Defaults</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.14 Page 11 of 11

## Parallel Menu

The Parallel Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.15.

**Table 1.15 Parallel Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
Parallel Menu	Allows you to set options for the parallel port connection.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Port Enable	Enables or disables the parallel port.
	Port Timeout	Sets the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence.
	Parallel PDL	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the parallel port.
	Binary PS	Enables or disables the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port.
	Bidirectional	Enables or disables bi-directional communications through the parallel port.

Refer to Table 1.16 on page 1-48 for step-by-step instructions

Table 1.16 Parallel Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Port Enable</b> Enable or disable the parallel port. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Parallel Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Parallel Menu Port Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Port Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Parallel Menu Port Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Port Timeout</b> Set the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence. The available values are:  5 - 300 seconds (30*) This item also causes an implicit job end such as Control D in PostScript or <ESC> E in PCL, and invokes the emulation functions associated with this action (e.g., formfeed, reset, etc.). The time changes incrementally by 1 second each time either <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Parallel Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Parallel Menu Port Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Port Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Parallel Menu Port Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.16 Page 1 of 3



Table 1.16 Parallel Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Parallel PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the parallel port. The available values are:  <b>Auto*</b> PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Parallel Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Parallel Menu Parallel PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Parallel PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Parallel Menu Parallel PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port. The available values are:  <b>Off*</b> On	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus PostScript Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	PostScript Menu Binary PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Binary PS = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	PostScript Menu Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.16 Page 2 of 3

Table 1.16 Parallel Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Bidirectional</b> Enable or disable bidirectional communications through the parallel port. The available values are:  <b>On*</b> Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> <input type="button" value="^1"/> or <b>Menu Down</b> <input type="button" value="v5"/> until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Parallel Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> <input type="button" value="^2"/> or <b>Item Down</b> <input type="button" value="v6"/> until you see:	<b>Parallel Menu</b> <b>Bidirectional</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> <input type="button" value="+3"/> or <b>Value Down</b> <input type="button" value="-7"/> until you see:	<b>Bidirectional =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> <input type="button" value="↵4"/> . You will see:	<b>Parallel Menu</b> <b>Bidirectional</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> <input type="button" value="←0"/> . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.16 Page 3 of 3

## Serial Menu

The Serial Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.17.

Table 1.17 Serial Menu Items

Menu	Description	
Serial Menu	Allows you to set options for the serial port connection (and appears only if the optional serial port is installed).	
	Menu Items	Description
	Port Enable	Enables or disables the serial port.
	Port Timeout	Sets the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence.
	Serial PDL	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the serial port.
	Flow Control	Sets the handshaking parameters for the serial port.
	Baud Rate	Sets the baud rate for the serial port.
	Binary PS	Enables or disables the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port.



*For these changes to take place, you must either power the machine OFF, then power it back ON, or restart the printer from the Test Menu.*

Refer to Table 1.18 on page 1-52 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.18 Serial Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Port Enable</b> Enable or disable the serial port. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Serial Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Serial Menu Port Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Port Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Serial Menu Port Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Port Timeout</b> Set the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence. The available values are:  5 - 300 seconds (30*) This item also causes an implicit job end such as Control D in PostScript or <ESC> E in PCL, and invokes the emulation functions associated with this action (e.g., formfeed, reset, etc.). The time changes incrementally by 1 second each time either <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Serial Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Serial Menu Port Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Port Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Serial Menu Port Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.18 Page 1 of 3

Table 1.18 Serial Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Serial PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the serial port. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Serial Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Serial Menu Serial PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Serial PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Serial Menu Serial PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Flow Control</b> Set the Flow Control handshaking parameters for the serial port. The available values are:  XON Robust XON Hardware*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Serial Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Serial Menu Handshake
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Handshake = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Serial Menu Handshake
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.18 Page 2 of 3

Table 1.18 Serial Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display										
<b>Baud Rate</b> Set the baud rate for the serial port. The available values are:  <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: top;"> <tr> <td>115200</td> <td><b>9600*</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>57600</td> <td>4800</td> </tr> <tr> <td>38400</td> <td>2400</td> </tr> <tr> <td>28800</td> <td>1200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>19200</td> <td>600</td> </tr> </table>	115200	<b>9600*</b>	57600	4800	38400	2400	28800	1200	19200	600	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Serial Menu
	115200	<b>9600*</b>										
	57600	4800										
	38400	2400										
	28800	1200										
19200	600											
2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Serial Menu Baud Rate											
3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Baud Rate = New Value											
4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Serial Menu Baud Rate											
5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready											
<b>Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port. The available values are:  <b>Off*</b> On  The parameter applies to all protocols and interfaces except the following: Parallel, Serial, EtherTalk, TokenTalk. EtherTalk and TokenTalk are always set to Binary mode. Parallel and Serial cannot be set to Binary mode.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus PostScript Menu										
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	PostScript Menu Binary PS										
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ until you see:	Binary PS = New Value										
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	PostScript Menu Binary PS										
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready										

Table 1.18 Page 3 of 3

## USB Menu

The USB Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.19.

**Table 1.19** USB Menu Items

Menu	Description	
USB Menu	Allows you to set options for the USB port connection.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Port Enable	Enables or disables the USB port.
	Port Timeout	Sets the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence.
	USB PDL	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the USB port.
	Binary PS	Enables or disables the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port.

Refer to Table 1.20 on page 1-56 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.20 USB Menu Functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Port Enable</b> Enable or disable the USB port. The available values are: On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus USB Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	USB Menu Port Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Port Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	USB Menu Port Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Port Timeout</b> Set the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence. The available values are: 5 - 300 seconds (30*) This item also causes an implicit job end such as Control D in PostScript or <ESC> E in PCL, and invokes the emulation functions associated with this action (e.g., formfeed, reset, etc.). The time changes incrementally by 1 second each time either <b>Value Up</b> or <b>Value Down</b> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> or <b>Value Down</b> causes continuous scrolling through the values.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus USB Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	USB Menu Port Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	Port Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	USB Menu Port Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.20 Page 1 of 2



Table 1.20 USB Menu Functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>USB PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the USB port. The available values are: Auto* PCL Postscript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus USB Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	USB Menu USB PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> + 3 or <b>Value Down</b> - 7 until you see:	USB PDL            = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	USB Menu USB PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the binary mode of PostScript for jobs received on this port. The available values are: On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus USB Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	USB Menu Binary PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> + 3 or <b>Value Down</b> - 7 until you see:	Binary PS            = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	USB Menu Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.20 Page 2 of 2

## Ethernet Menu

The Ethernet Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.21.

Table 1.21 Ethernet Menu Items

Menu	Description	
<b>Ethernet Menu</b>	Allows you to set options for the Ethernet port connection.	
	Menu Items	Description
	<b>LPR Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet LPR protocol.
	<b>LPR Banner</b>	Enables or disables the LPR banner sheet.
	<b>LPR PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet LPR protocol.
	<b>LPR Binary PS</b>	Enables or disables the LPR binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>DLC/LLC Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet DLC/LLC protocol.
	<b>DLC/LLC PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet DLC/LLC protocol.
	<b>DLC/LLC Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the DLC/LLC binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>NetBEUI Enabl</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet NetBEUI interface.
	<b>NetBEUI PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet NetBEUI interface.
	<b>NetBEUI Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the NetBEUI binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>AppSocket Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet AppSocket interface.
	<b>AppSocket PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet AppSocket interface.
<b>AppSocket Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the AppSocket binary mode of PostScript.	

Table 1.21 Page 1 of 2

Table 1.21 Ethernet Menu Items (continued)

Menu	Description	
Ethernet Menu (continued)	<b>ETalk Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet EtherTalk protocol.
	<b>HTTP Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Ethernet HTTP Server protocol.
	<b>IP Address Res</b>	Sets the method used to resolve (assign) the IP address, including Sub Net mask and default gateway.
	<b>IP Address</b>	Sets the four byte IP address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Sub Net Mask</b>	Sets the four byte Sub Net Mask address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Default Gateway</b>	Sets the four byte Default Gateway address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Port Timeout</b>	Sets the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence.
	<b>Speed</b>	Sets the speed of the 10/100 Ethernet interface. 10 MB is the default. This item does not appear when the 10Base2 Ethernet interface is installed.

Table 1.21 Page 2 of 2

Refer to Table 1.22 on page 1-60 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>LPR Enable</b> Enable or disable the Ethernet LPR protocol. The available values are: On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	LPR Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>LPR Banner</b> Enable or disable the LPR banner sheet. The available values are: On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Banner
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	LPR Banner = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Banner
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 1 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>LPR PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet LPR protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu LPR PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> + 3 or <b>Value Down</b> - 7 until you see:	LPR PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu LPR PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>DLC/LLC Enable</b> Enable or disable the DLC/LLC protocol. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu DLC/LLC Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> + 3 or <b>Value Down</b> - 7 until you see:	DLC/LLC Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu DLC/LLC Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 2 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>DLC/LLC PDL</b> Set the default emulation for the DLC/LLC protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu DLC PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	DLC PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu DLC PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>LPR Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the LPR binary mode of PostScript. The available values are:  On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Binary PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	LPR Binary PS = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu LPR Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 3 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>NetBEUI Enable</b> Enable or disable the NetBEUI protocol. The available values are:  <b>On*</b> <b>Off</b>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Ethernet Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>NetBEUI Enable</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	<b>NetBEUI Enable =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>NetBEUI Enable</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>NetBEUI PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the NetBEUI protocol. The available values are:  <b>Auto*</b> <b>PCL</b> <b>PostScript</b>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Ethernet Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>NetBEUI PDL</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	<b>NetBEUI PDL =</b> <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>NetBEUI PDL</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.22 Page 4 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>NetBEUI Bin PS</b> Enable or disable the NetBEUI binary mode of PostScript. The available values are: On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu NetBEUI Bin PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	NetBEUI Bin PS = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu NetBEUI Bin PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>AppSocket Enabl</b> Enable or disable the Ethernet AppSocket protocol. The AppSocket in the printer supports ports 2000, 9100, and 2501. The available values are: On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket Enabl
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	AppSocket Enabl= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket Enabl
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 5 of 12



Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>AppSocket PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the Ethernet AppSocket protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ 7 until you see:	AppSocket PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>AppSocket Bin PS</b> Enable or disable the AppSocket binary mode of PostScript. The available values are:  On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket Bin PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $-$ 7 until you see:	AppSocket Bin PS= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Ethernet Menu AppSocket Bin PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 6 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>ETalk Enable</b> Enable or disable the Ethernet EtherTalk protocol. The available values are: <b>On*</b> Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Ethernet Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>ETalk Enable</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>ETalk Enable</b> = <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>ETalk Enable</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>HTTP Enable</b> Enable or disable the Ethernet HTTP Server protocol. The available values are: <b>On*</b> Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Ethernet Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>HTTP Enable</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>HTTP Enable</b> = <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>Ethernet Menu</b> <b>HTTP Enable</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.22 Page 7 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)









Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>IP Address Res.</b> Set the method used to resolve (assign) the IP address, including Sub Net mask and default gateway. The available values are:  Static BOOTP/RARP DHCP*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Ethernet Menu IP Address Res.
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	IP Address Res.= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Ethernet Menu IP Address Res.
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 8 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>IP Address</b></p> <p>Set the four byte IP address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx = 000 to 255.</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed IP address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu IP Address
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	IP Address = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	IP Address = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	5. To change other characters in the IP address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	IP Address = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the IP address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu IP Address
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 9 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Sub Net Mask</b></p> <p>Set the four byte Sub Net Mask address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx = 000 to 255.</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Sub Net Mask address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu Sub Net Mask
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	Sub Net Mask = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	Sub Net Mask = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	5. To change other characters in the Sub Net Mask address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	Sub Net Mask = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the Sub Net Mask address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu Sub Net Mask
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 10 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Default Gateway</b></p> <p>Set the four byte Default Gateway address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx = 000 to 255.</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Default Gateway address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu Default Gateway
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	5. To change other characters in the Default Gateway address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the Default Gateway address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu Default Gateway
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 11 of 12

Table 1.22 Ethernet Menu functions (continued)






















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Port Timeout</b> Set the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence. The available values are: 5 - 300 seconds (30*) This item also causes an implicit job end such as Control D in PostScript or <ESC> E in PCL, and invokes the emulation functions associated with this action (e.g., formfeed, reset, etc.). The time changes incrementally by 1 second each time either <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  causes continuous scrolling through the values.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Ethernet Menu Port Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Port Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Ethernet Menu Port Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready
<b>Speed</b> Set the speed of the 10/100 Ethernet interface. The available values are: Auto* 10/Half 10/Full 100/Half 100/Full  <i>This item does not appear when the 10Base2 Ethernet Interface is installed.</i>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Ethernet Menu Speed
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Speed = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Ethernet Menu Speed
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.22 Page 12 of 12

## Token Ring Menu

The Token Ring Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.23.

**Table 1.23 Token Ring Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
<b>Token Ring Menu</b>	Allows you to set options for the Token Ring port connection (and appears only if the optional Token Ring interface is installed).	
	Menu Items	Description
	<b>LPR Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring LPR protocol.
	<b>LPR Banner</b>	Enables or disables the LPR banner sheet.
	<b>LPR PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Token Ring LPR protocol.
	<b>LPR Binary PS</b>	Enables or disables the LPR binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>DLC/LLC Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring DLC/LLC protocol.
	<b>DLC/LLC PDL</b>	Sets the default emulation for the Token Ring DLC/LLC protocol.
	<b>DLC/LLC Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the DLC/LLC binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>NetBEUI Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring NetBEUI interface.
	<b>NetBEUI PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Token Ring NetBEUI interface.
	<b>NetBEUI Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the NetBEUI binary mode of PostScript.
	<b>AppSocket Enabl</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring AppSocket interface.
<b>AppSocket PDL</b>	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Token Ring AppSocket interface.	
<b>AppSocket Bin PS</b>	Enables or disables the AppSocket binary mode of PostScript.	

Table 1.24 Page 1 of 2



Table 1.23 Token Ring Menu Items (continued)

Menu	Description	
Token Ring Menu (continued)	<b>TTalk Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring TokenTalk protocol.
	<b>HTTP Enable</b>	Enables or disables the Token Ring HTTP Server protocol.
	<b>IP Address Res</b>	Sets the method used to resolve (assign) the IP address, including Sub Net mask and default gateway.
	<b>IP Address</b>	Sets the four byte IP address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Sub Net Mask</b>	Sets the four byte Sub Net Mask address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Default Gateway</b>	Sets the four byte Default Gateway address. This item appears only if the IP Address Res is set to static.
	<b>Port Timeout</b>	Sets the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence.
	<b>Source Routing</b>	Sets the source routing option.
	<b>Speed</b>	Sets the default ring speed of the Token Ring interface.
	<b>LAA</b>	Sets the six byte Locally Administered Address.

Table 1.24 Page 2 of 2

Refer to Table 1.24 on page 1-74 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>LPR Enable</b> Enable or disable the Token Ring LPR protocol. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	LPR Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>LPR Banner</b> Enable or disable the LPR banner sheet. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Banner
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	LPR Banner = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Banner
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 1 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>LPR PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the Token Ring LPR protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu LPR PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	LPR PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu LPR PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>DLC/LLC Enable</b> Enable or disable the DLC/LLC protocol. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu DLC/LLC Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	DLC/LLC Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu DLC/LLC Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 2 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>DLC/LLC PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the DLC/LLC protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu DLC PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	DLC PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu DLC PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>LPR Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the LPR binary mode of PostScript. The available values are:  On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Binary PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	LPR Binary PS = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu LPR Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 3 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>NetBEUI Enable</b> Enable or disable the NetBEUI protocol. The available values are:  <b>On*</b> Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\wedge$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\vee$ 7 until you see:	NetBEUI Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>NetBEUI PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the NetBEUI protocol. The available values are:  <b>Auto*</b> PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\wedge$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\vee$ 7 until you see:	NetBEUI PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 4 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>NetBEUI Bin PS</b> Enable or disable the NetBEUI binary mode of PostScript. The available values are: On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI Bin PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	NetBEUI Binary PS = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu NetBEUI Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>AppSocket Enabl</b> Enable or disable the Token Ring AppSocket protocol. The AppSocket in the printer supports ports 2000, 9100, and 2501. The available values are: On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket Enabl
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	AppSocket Enabl= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket Enabl
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 5 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>AppSocket PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the Token Ring AppSocket protocol. The available values are:  Auto* PCL PostScript	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket PDL
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	AppSocket PDL = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket PDL
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>AppSocket Bin PS</b> Enable or disable the AppSocket binary mode of PostScript. The available values are:  On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket Bin PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $+ 3$ or <b>Value Down</b> $- 7$ until you see:	AppSocket Bin PS= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu AppSocket Bin PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow 0$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 6 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>TTalk Enable</b> Enable or disable the Token Ring TTalk protocol. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu TTalk Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	TTalk Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu TTalk Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>HTTP Enable</b> Enable or disable the Token Ring HTTP Server protocol. The available values are:  On* Off	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu HTTP Enable
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	HTTP Enable = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu HTTP Enable
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 7 of 14



Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)









Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>IP Address Res.</b> Set the method used to resolve (assign) the IP address, including Sub Net mask and default gateway. The available values are:  Static BOOTP/RARP DHCP*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Token Ring Menu IP Address Res.
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	IP Address Res.= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Token Ring Menu IP Address Res.
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 8 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>IP Address</b></p> <p>Set the four byte IP address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx=000 to 255.</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed IP address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu IP Address
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	IP Address = <u>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx</u>
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	IP Address = <u>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx</u>
	5. To change other characters in the IP address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	IP Address = <u>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx</u>
	6. When you have completed setting the IP address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu IP Address
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 9 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Sub Net Mask</b></p> <p>Set the four byte Sub Net Mask address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx=000 to 255</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Sub Net Mask address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu Sub Net Mask
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	Sub Net Mask = <u>xxx</u> .xxx.xxx.xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	Sub Net Mask = <u>xxx</u> .xxx.xxx.xxx
	5. To change other characters in the Sub Net Mask address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	Sub Net Mask = <u>xxx</u> .xxx.xxx.xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the Sub Net Mask address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu Sub Net Mask
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 10 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Default Gateway</b></p> <p>Set the four byte Default Gateway address. The available values are:</p> <p>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Where xxx = 000 to 255.</p> <p>This item only appears if IP Address Res. is set to <i>Static</i>.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> [^ 2] moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Default Gateway address and <b>Item Down</b> [v 6] moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> [^ 1] or <b>Menu Down</b> [v 5] until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> [^ 2] or <b>Item Down</b> [v 6] until you see:	Token Ring Menu Default Gateway
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7]. You will see:	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] causes continuous scrolling through the values.	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	5. To change other characters in the Default Gateway address, press <b>Item Up</b> [^ 2] or <b>Item Down</b> [v 6] to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	Default Gateway= xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the Default Gateway address, press <b>Enter</b> [↵ 4]. You will see:	Token Ring Menu Default Gateway
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> [K 0]. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 11 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Port Timeout</b></p> <p>Set the time for determining when to end an incomplete print job and poll the next port in the polling sequence. The available values are:</p> <p>5 - 300 seconds (60*)</p> <p>This item also causes an implicit job end such as Control D in PostScript or &lt;ESC&gt; E in PCL, and invokes the emulation functions associated with this action (e.g., form feed, reset, etc.).</p> <p>The time changes incrementally by 1 second each time either <b>Value Up</b> <b>[+ 3]</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>[- 7]</b> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <b>[+ 3]</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>[- 7]</b> causes continuous scrolling through the values.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> <b>[^ 1]</b> or <b>Menu Down</b> <b>[v 5]</b> until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> <b>[^ 2]</b> or <b>Item Down</b> <b>[v 6]</b> until you see:	Token Ring Menu Port Timeout
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> <b>[+ 3]</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>[- 7]</b> until you see:	Port Timeout = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> <b>[↵ 4]</b> . You will see:	Token Ring Menu Port Timeout
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> <b>[← 0]</b> . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 12 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Source Routing</b> Set the source routing option. The available values are:  <b>Off*</b> All Single/All Single/Specific	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu Source Routing
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	Source Routing New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu Source Routing
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready
<b>Speed</b> Set default ring speed for Token Ring interface. The available values are in MBits are:  4 16*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Token Ring Menu Speed
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	Speed New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Token Ring Menu Speed
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ 0. You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 13 of 14

Table 1.24 Token Ring Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>LAA</b></p> <p>Set the six byte Locally Administered Address. The valid values are:</p> <p>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx            where xx = 00 to FF hexadecimal            where the xxxx.xxxx.xxxx can equal any value within the valid range of 4000 0000 0000 and 7FFF FFFF FFFF.</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Locally Administered Address and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Token Ring Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Token Ring Menu LAA
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	LAA = <u>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</u>
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	LAA = <u>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</u>
	5. To change other characters in the Locally Administered Address, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	LAA = <u>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</u>
	6. When you have completed setting the Locally Administered Address, press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Token Ring Menu LAA
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.24 Page 14 of 14

## Novell Menu

The Novell The Novell Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.25.

**Table 1.25 Novell Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
Novell Menu	Allows you to modify Novell parameters.	
	Menu Items	Description
	Novell Enable	Enables or disables the Novell protocol.
	Novell PDL	Sets the default Print Description Language emulation for the Novell protocol.
	Novell Binary PS	Enables or disables the Novell binary mode of PostScript.
	Novell Mode	Sets the PServer mode for the Novell protocol.
	Frame Type	Sets the frame type used for the Novell protocol.
	Polling Interval	Sets the rate (in seconds) at which the PServer issues polling requests for assigned queues.
	PServer Name	Sets the name of the PServer in this printer.
	Primary Server	Sets the name of the Primary file server.
	NDS Tree	Sets the NDS Tree character string.
	NDS Context	Set the NDS context string.

Refer to Table 1.26 on page 1-89 for step-by-step instructions.



Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Novell Enable</b> Enable or disable the Novell protocol. The available values are:  <b>On*</b> Off	Press Menu Up $\uparrow$ or Menu Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Ethernet Menu
	Press Item Up $\uparrow$ or Item Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Ethernet Menu Novell Enable
	1. Press Value Up $\uparrow$ or Value Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell Enable = New Value
	2. Press Enter $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Ethernet Menu Novell Enable
	3. Press On Line $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Novell PDL</b> Set the default Print Description Language emulation for the Novell protocol. The available values are:  <b>Auto*</b> PCL PostScript	1. Press Menu Up $\uparrow$ or Menu Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press Item Up $\uparrow$ or Item Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell Menu Novell PDL
	3. Press Value Up $\uparrow$ or Value Down $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell PDL = New Value
	4. Press Enter $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Novell Menu Novell PDL
	5. Press On Line $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 1 of 7

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Novell Binary PS</b> Enable or disable the Novell binary mode of PostScript. The available values are: On Off*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Novell Menu Novell Binary PS
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Novell Binary PS= New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Novell Menu Novell Binary PS
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Novell Mode</b> Set the PServer mode for the Novell protocol. The available values are: NDS BEM NDS/BEM*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Novell Menu Novell Mode
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Novell Mode = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Novell Menu Novell Mode
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 2 of 7

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Frame Type</b></p> <p>Sets the frame type used for the Novell protocol. The available values for Ethernet are:</p> <p>Auto* 802.2 802.3 SNAP Ethernet II</p> <p>The available values for Token Ring are:</p> <p>Auto* TR-802.2 TR-SNAP</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell Menu Frame Type
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Frame Type = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Novell Menu Frame Type
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
<p><b>Polling Interval</b></p> <p>Set the rate (in seconds) at which the PServer issues polling requests for assigned queues. The available values are:</p> <p>1 - 29 seconds 2*</p> <p>The Polling Interval changes incrementally by 1 each time either <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> causes continuous scrolling through the values.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell Menu Polling Interval
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Polling Interval = New Value
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\rightarrow$ . You will see:	Novell Menu Polling Interval
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready
Table 1.26 Page 3 of 7		

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)

























Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>PServer Name</b></p> <p>Set the name of the PServer in this printer (a name of 2 to 47 characters in length). The available values are:</p> <p>A - Z, 0 - 9, hyphen (-), underscore (_)  <b>XXR_&lt;macaddress&gt;*</b></p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b>  moves the cursor to the right through the displayed PServer name and <b>Item Down</b>  moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b>  increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b>  decrements the value.</p> <p> <i>From any cursor position, you can null out (delete) to the end of the string by selecting the space character with <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  and then pressing <b>Enter</b> .</i></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Novell Menu PServer Name
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  . You will see:	PServer Name = xxx...xxx
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  causes continuous scrolling through the values.	PServer Name = xxx...xxx
	5. To change other characters in the PServer name, press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	PServer Name = xxx...xxx
	6. When you have completed setting the PServer Name, press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Novell Menu PServer Name
	7. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 4 of 7

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)

























Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Primary Server</b></p> <p>Set the name of the Primary file server (a name of 2 to 47 characters in length). The available values are:</p> <p>A - Z, 0 - 9, hyphen (-) and underscore (_) <b>Null*</b></p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b>  moves the cursor to the right through the displayed Primary Server name and <b>Item Down</b>  moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b>  increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b>  decrements the value.</p> <p> <i>From any cursor position, you can null out (delete) to the end of the string by selecting the space character with <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  and then pressing <b>Enter</b> .</i></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Novell Menu Primary Server
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  . You will see:	Primary Server = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  causes continuous scrolling through the values.	Primary Server = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	5. To change other characters in the Primary Server name, press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	Primary Server = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	6. When you have completed setting the Primary Server Name, press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Novell Menu Primary Server
	7. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 5 of 7

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)


Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>NDS Tree</b></p> <p>Set the NDS Tree character string (from 0 to 63 characters in length). The available values are:</p> <p>Null A - Z, 0 - 9, hyphen (-) and underscore (_)</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed NDS Tree character string and <b>Item Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> decrements the value.</p> <p> <i>From any cursor position, you can null out (delete) to the end of the string by selecting the space character with <b>Value Up</b> <math>\uparrow</math> or <b>Value Down</b> <math>\downarrow</math> and then pressing <b>Enter</b> <math>\enter</math>.</i></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ until you see:	Novell Menu NDS Tree
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ . You will see:	NDS Tree = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ causes continuous scrolling through the values.	NDS Tree = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	5. To change other characters in the NDS Tree character string, press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	NDS Tree = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	6. When you have completed setting the NDS Tree, press <b>Enter</b> $\enter$ . You will see:	Novell Menu NDS Tree
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> $\leftarrow$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 6 of 7

Table 1.26 Novell Menu functions (continued)


Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>NDS Context</b></p> <p>Set the NDS context string (from 0 to 127 characters in length). The available values are:</p> <p>Null A - Z, 0 - 9, hyphen (-), period (.), and underscore (_)</p> <p>For this item (after Step 3), <b>Item Up</b> <b>↑</b> moves the cursor to the right through the displayed NDS Context string and <b>Item Down</b> <b>↓</b> moves the cursor to the left. This allows you to change characters within the string rather than having to re-enter the entire string.</p> <p>With the cursor displayed under a character, <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> increments the value of that character and <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> decrements the value.</p> <p> <i>From any cursor position, you can null out (delete) to the end of the string by selecting the space character with <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> and then pressing <b>Enter</b> <b>↵</b>.</i></p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Menu Down</b> <b>↓</b> until you see:	Menus Novell Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Item Down</b> <b>↓</b> until you see:	Novell Menu NDS Context
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> . You will see:	NDS Context = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	4. Press <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> to change the value of the character above the cursor. The value is incremented or decremented by 1 each time the key is pressed. Holding down <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> causes continuous scrolling through the values.	NDS Context = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	5. To change other characters in the NDS Context string, press <b>Item Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Item Down</b> <b>↓</b> to scroll right or left respectively through the character string, then press <b>Value Up</b> <b>↑</b> or <b>Value Down</b> <b>↓</b> to change the value of the character above the cursor (as in Step 4).	NDS Context = <u>xxx...xxx</u>
	6. When you have completed setting the NDS Context, press <b>Enter</b> <b>↵</b> . You will see:	Novell Menu NDS Context
	7. Press <b>On Line</b> <b>↵</b> . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.26 Page 7 of 7

## Print Menu

The Print Menu and its available items are described in Table 1.27.

**Table 1.27 Print Menu Items**

Menu	Description	
<b>Print Menu</b>	Allows you to generate printer reports.	
	Menu Items	Description
	<b>Config Sheet</b>	Prints a Configuration Sheet showing the printer's current information and menu settings.
	<b>PCL Demo</b>	Prints a sample page demonstrating the printer's capabilities.
	<b>PCL Font List</b>	Prints a list of PCL fonts currently loaded.
	<b>PS Font List</b>	Prints a complete list of all PostScript language typefaces currently loaded.
	<b>Menu Map</b>	Prints a page showing the structure of the Control Panel Menu Tree.
	<b>Test Print</b>	Prints a "test pattern" for analysis of print quality over the entire page (intended for use by the service technician).
	<b>Disk Directory</b>	Prints a copy of the disk directory (and appears only if the optional hard drive is installed).
	<b>Hex Mode</b>	Enables or disables hex dump mode, which prints the data stream as hex codes instead of interpreting it as print data.
<b>Restart Printer</b>	Re-boots the printer as if the power was cycled but bypasses the power on diagnostics.	

Refer to Table 1.28 on page 1-97 for step-by-step instructions.



Table 1.28 Print Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Config Sheet</b></p> <p>Print a Configuration Sheet showing the printer's current information and menu settings.</p> <p>The Configuration Sheet is printed using the PCL default paper size, regardless of the actual paper size.</p> <p>One copy is printed regardless of the Print Quantity setting.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> <input type="button" value="^1"/> or <b>Menu Down</b> <input type="button" value="v5"/> until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Test Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> <input type="button" value="^2"/> or <b>Item Down</b> <input type="button" value="v6"/> until you see:	<b>Test Menu</b> <b>Config Sheet</b>
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> <input type="button" value="↵4"/> . You will see:	<b>Processing...</b> <b>Config Sheet</b>
	4. After the Configuration Sheet prints, you will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<p><b>PCL Demo</b></p> <p>Print a sample page demonstrating the printer's capabilities.</p> <p>The Demo Page is printed using the A4 or Letter size only at 600x600 dpi.</p> <p>The number of quantities printed is the print quantity setting.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> <input type="button" value="^1"/> or <b>Menu Down</b> <input type="button" value="v5"/> until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Test Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> <input type="button" value="^2"/> or <b>Item Down</b> <input type="button" value="v6"/> until you see:	<b>Test Menu</b> <b>PCL Demo</b>
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> <input type="button" value="↵4"/> . You will see:	<b>Processing...</b> <b>Demo</b>
	4. After the Demo Page prints, you will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.28 Page 1 of 4

Table 1.28 Print Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>PCL Font List</b> Print a list of PCL fonts currently loaded.  One copy is printed regardless of the Print Quantity setting.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Test Menu PCL Font List
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Processing... PCL Font List
	4. After the PCL Font List prints, you will see:	Ready
<b>PS Font List</b> Print a complete list of all PostScript language typefaces. The list includes printer resident fonts and fonts stored on the hard disk.  One copy is printed regardless of the Print Quantity setting.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Test Menu PS Font List
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Processing... PS Font List
	4. After the PostScript Font List prints, you will see:	Ready
<b>Menu Map</b> Print a page showing the configuration of the Control Panel Menu Tree.  One copy is printed regardless of the Print Quantity setting.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\wedge 1$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\vee 5$ until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\wedge 2$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\vee 6$ until you see:	Test Menu Menu Map
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow 4$ . You will see:	Processing... Menu Map
	4. After the Menu Map prints, you will see:	Ready

Table 1.28 Page 2 of 4

Table 1.28 Print Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Test Print</b></p> <p>Print a two page “test pattern” for analysis of print quality over the entire page (intended for use by the service provider).</p> <p>The number of Test Prints produced is determined by the value of Print Quality in the System Menu.</p> <p>Printed format is determined by the Default Source and Default Type. All test prints are printed at 600x600 dpi.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Test Menu Test Print
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Processing... Test
	4. After the Test Print prints, you will see:	Ready
<p><b>Disk Directory</b></p> <p>Print a copy of the disk directory.</p> <p>One copy is printed regardless of the Print Quantity value in the System Menu.</p> <p>This item is only available if the optional Hard Disk Drive is installed.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	Test Menu Disk Directory
	3. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. You will see:	Processing... Disk Directory
	4. After the Disk Directory prints, you will see:	Ready

Table 1.28 Page 3 of 4

Table 1.28 Print Menu functions



















Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Hex Mode</b> Set to print output as hexadecimal codes instead of normal print data. The available values are:  Off On	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Test Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Test Menu Hex Mode
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Hex Mode                    = <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Test Menu Hex Mode
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready
<b>Restart Printer</b> Re-boot the printer without powering it off and powering it on again. The available values are:  Yes No*   You must select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>Enter</b>  for this function to take effect.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Print Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Print Menu Restart Printer
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Restart Printer= <b>New Value</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Print Menu Restart Printer
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.28 Page 4 of 4

## Reset Menu

The Reset Menu (which only appears in the Main Menu if the printer is powered on while simultaneously holding down the **Online** and **Enter** keys) and its available items are described in Table 1.29.

**Table 1.29** Reset Menu Items

Menu	Description	
<b>Reset Menu</b>	Allows you to access printer reset functions (and appears only when the printer is powered on while holding down the Online and Enter keys).	
	Menu Items	Description
	<b>Factory Defaults</b>	Resets menus to factory defaults (except networks).
	<b>Network Defaults</b>	Resets parameters in the Ethernet, Token Ring, and Novell Menus to factory defaults.
	<b>Demo Mode</b>	Places the printer in demo mode.
	<b>Delete All Jobs</b>	Deletes all secure jobs from the hard disk (and appears only if the optional hard drive is installed).
	<b>Disk Initialize</b>	Initializes the hard disk (and appears only if the optional hard drive is installed).
	<b>Disk Format</b>	Formats the hard disk (and appears only if the optional hard drive is installed).
	<b>Flash Format</b>	Formats flash memory (and appears only if flash memory is installed).

Refer to Table 1.30 on page 1-102 for step-by-step instructions.

Table 1.30 Reset Menu functions

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Factory Defaults</b> Reset all menus to factory defaults (with the exception of "Language" in the Reset Menu, "Defaults" in the System Menu, and parameters in the Ethernet, Token Ring, and Novell Menus). The available values are:  Yes <b>No*</b>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Reset Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Factory Defaults</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>Factory Defaults =</b> <b>Yes</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Factory Defaults</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>Network Defaults</b> Reset parameters in the Ethernet, Token Ring, and Novell Menus to factory defaults. The available values are:  Yes <b>No*</b>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Reset Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Network Defaults</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	<b>Network Defaults</b> <b>Yes</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Network Defaults</b>
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.30 Page 1 of 4

Table 1.30 Reset Menu functions (continued)









Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<p><b>Demo Mode</b></p> <p>Place the printer in the demo mode. The available values are:</p> <p>Yes No*</p> <p>With the printer in demo mode, different factory-installed demo pages can be printed by using the eight Control Panel keys to select the type of demo page and the number of copies.</p> <p>Once Demo Mode is selected, the printer re-enters this state automatically every time the power is cycled.</p> <p>Demo Mode can be exited by Powering On the N40 while holding down the <b>Online Key</b> and the <b>Enter Key</b>.</p>	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  until you see:	Menus Reset Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  until you see:	Reset Menu Demo Mode
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  until you see:	Demo Mode = Yes
	4. Press <b>Enter</b>  . You will see:	Reset Menu Demo Mode
	5. Press <b>On Line</b>  . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.30 Page 2 of 4

Table 1.30 Reset Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Delete All Jobs</b> Delete all Secure jobs from the hard disk. The available values are: Yes No*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Reset Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Reset Menu Delete Jobs
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Delete Jobs = Yes
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Reset Menu Delete Jobs
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready
<b>Disk Initialize</b> Initialize the Hard Disk Drive. The available values are: Yes No* This function is ignored if the disk is locked (write protected) via a PjL or SNMP command.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 1}$ or <b>Menu Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 5}$ until you see:	Menus Reset Menu
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\boxed{\wedge 2}$ or <b>Item Down</b> $\boxed{\vee 6}$ until you see:	Reset Menu Init Disk
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\boxed{+ 3}$ or <b>Value Down</b> $\boxed{- 7}$ until you see:	Init Disk = Yes
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 4}$ . You will see:	Reset Menu Init Disk
	5. Press <b>On Line</b> $\boxed{\leftarrow 0}$ . You will see:	Ready

Table 1.30 Page 3 of 4



Table 1.30 Reset Menu functions (continued)

Menu Item and Function	Keystrokes	Display
<b>Disk Format</b> Format the Hard Disk Drive. The available values are: Yes No* Normally, this function is used only if the disk has not been formatted previously. Initiating this command on a formatted disk will write over any existing data on the disk. This function is ignored if the disk is locked (write protected) via a PjL or SNMP command.	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Reset Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Disk Format</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	<b>Disk Format</b> = <b>Yes</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. During formatting, you will see:	<b>Disk Format</b> <b>Please Wait...</b>
	5. When the formatting is complete, you will see:	<b>Ready</b>
<b>Flash Format</b> Format flash memory. The available values are: Yes No*	1. Press <b>Menu Up</b> $\uparrow$ 1 or <b>Menu Down</b> $\downarrow$ 5 until you see:	<b>Menus</b> <b>Reset Menu</b>
	2. Press <b>Item Up</b> $\uparrow$ 2 or <b>Item Down</b> $\downarrow$ 6 until you see:	<b>Reset Menu</b> <b>Flash Format</b>
	3. Press <b>Value Up</b> $\uparrow$ 3 or <b>Value Down</b> $\downarrow$ 7 until you see:	<b>Flash Format</b> = <b>Yes</b>
	4. Press <b>Enter</b> $\leftarrow$ 4. During formatting, you will see:	<b>Flash Format</b> <b>Please Wait...</b>
	5. When the formatting is complete, you will see:	<b>Ready</b>

Table 1.30 Page 4 of 4

## Automatic Tray Switching

---

Automatic tray switching, available for both PCL and PostScript jobs, enables you to group two or more input trays together into one logical tray, and in a specific order in which the trays will be searched to satisfy an input request. Tray switching is useful for:

- Increasing paper capacity.

When the current paper tray runs out of paper, the printer automatically switches to the next tray in the sequence, provided the paper size and type in the next tray is the same size and type as that in the current tray.

- Searching for the correct paper size and type.

If the paper size and type specified in your software application do not match the paper loaded in the current paper tray, the printer automatically searches the next tray in the sequence for a paper size and type that match.

- Loading paper in one tray while printing from another tray (filling an empty tray while printing).

Tray switching is made possible via the Tray Sequence item in the Control Panel's Tray Menu. It enables grouping of Trays 1 and 2 in the printer, the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder, and Trays 3, 4 and 5 in the 2,500 Sheet Feeder (if installed) into a variety of sequence combinations. Tray switching can also be turned off.

---



*The 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder is referred to as the MBF (for Multiple Bypass Feeder) in the Control Panel's Tray Sequence settings.*

---

A description of the settings and rules for using the Tray Sequence function is presented in Table 1.31 “Tray Sequence Default” (page 1-108).

## Tray Sequence Default

The order in which the printer uses trays depends upon the options installed.

**Table 1.31 Tray Sequence Default**

Option	Tray Sequence
Without a High Capacity Feeder, the printer follows this sequence	MBF-1-2
With a High Capacity Feeder installed, the printer follows this sequence	MBF-4-5-1-2-3
With an Envelope Feeder installed, the printer follows this sequence	1-2
With an Envelope Feeder and High Capacity Feeder installed, the printer follows this sequence	MBF-4-5-1-2-3



*Only installed tray options will appear. If the value is set to Off in the Tray Menu, the printer will print from the requested tray only, even if other trays contain the correct stock*

## Paper Handling Exception Conditions

Table 1.32 describes the paper selection process based on fully defined or partially defined paper selection parameters. A paper request may include one or more of the following parameters: paper tray, paper size, paper type (e.g., plain, letterhead, etc.).



*Specifying a paper source (a specific tray) does not guarantee that paper will be fed from that tray if the type and size can be satisfied from another source. The exception to this is a manual feed request, which always comes from the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder unless overridden by the printer operator.*

**Table 1.32 Paper handling exception conditions**

Paper Type	Paper Size	Paper Source	Size/Type Used
Not specified	Not specified	Not specified	Default size/Default type
Not specified	Not specified	Specified (not manual feed)	Default size; Type configured in specified tray
Not specified	Not specified	Specified (manual feed)	Manual feed request; Default size
Not specified	Specified	Not specified	Specified size/Default type
Not specified	Specified	Specified (not manual feed)	Specified size; Type configured in specified tray
Not specified	Specified	Specified (manual feed)	Manual feed request; Specified size
Specified	Not specified	Not specified	Default size/Specified type
Specified	Not specified	Specified (not manual feed)	Default size/Specified type
Specified	Not specified	Specified (manual feed)	Manual feed request; Default size/Specified type
Specified	Specified	Not specified	Specified size/Specified type
Specified	Specified	Specified (not manual feed)	Specified size/Specified type
Specified	Specified	Specified (manual feed)	Manual feed request; Specified size/Specified type

The fourth column of Table 1.32 defines which paper size and paper type to use based on fully or partially specified paper selection parameters. After the type and size are determined, the next step is to determine which paper tray to use to satisfy the request. If the request can be satisfied by one of the currently configured trays, then the appropriate paper tray is used. (Note that the fourth column of Table 1.32 does not list a paper source to use, even though the paper source may be specified.)

- If the paper source is specified, and the other parameters can be satisfied by that paper source, then the specified source is used.
- If the specified source cannot satisfy the request, but another source can satisfy the paper size and type requested, then that alternate source is used, with no operator intervention required.
- If the specified source cannot satisfy the request, but another source can satisfy the request but is out of paper, then the operator is prompted to load paper in the empty tray that can satisfy the request.

## Tray Sequence Rules

When you define a Tray Sequence, the printer searches the input trays for the correct size and type of paper for each job that is submitted.

- If you do not specify an input tray when sending a job to the printer (e.g., no paper source command is sent, or the paper source is set to “Auto” in PCL), the trays included in the Tray Sequence are searched first (in the sequence order), before other trays not in the sequence.
- If you specify an input tray when sending a job to the printer, and that tray is included in the Tray Sequence, the printer will check that tray for the correct size and type of paper.
  - If the tray contains the correct paper, then it is used.
  - If the tray does not contain the correct paper (e.g., it contains other paper or is empty), the other trays in the sequence are searched.
    - If any of these trays contains the correct paper, then it is used.
    - If any of these trays are set to the correct paper size and type but all of the trays in the sequence are empty, then the printer will prompt you to load paper into the specified tray.
    - If no trays in the sequence are set to the correct paper size and type, then the remaining trays are searched. If there are no trays that can satisfy the request, then the printer will prompt you to load paper into the specified tray.


- If you include “MBF” in the Tray Sequence setting, a request to feed paper from any other tray in the sequence will be overridden and the printer will attempt to feed paper from the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder first. If the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder is out of paper, then the other trays in the sequence are searched.



## Tray Sequence Examples

The examples in Table 1.33 discuss conditions and actions that take place when various Tray Sequence settings are used.

**Table 1.33** Tray Sequence examples

Condition	Action(s) Taken
<p>The Tray Sequence is set to <b>4-5-1</b>.</p> <p>All trays are set to <i>Letter</i> paper.</p> <p>There is no paper in Tray 1.</p> <p>Letter paper is requested with the source set to <i>Auto</i>.</p>	<p>The printer searches for letter paper in the tray sequence order (4-5-1). The printer feeds paper from Tray 4 until it becomes empty, and then from Tray 5. When Tray 5 becomes empty, the printer prompts you to load paper (since Tray 1 is empty).</p> <p> <i>Trays 2 and 3 also contain letter paper but these trays are not searched because they are not part of the Tray Sequence and the printer found the requested paper in at least one tray in the sequence.</i></p>
<p>The Tray Sequence is set to <b>1-2-3</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A Tray 2 paper source is requested.</li> <li>• All trays meet the size/type requirement.</li> </ul>	<p>The printer feeds paper from Tray 2 because it meets the size and type requested. When Tray 2 becomes empty, the printer feeds from Trays 1 and 3.</p>
<p>The Tray Sequence is set to <b>1-2</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trays 1 and 2 are set to <i>Letter</i> paper, but both trays are empty.</li> <li>• Letter paper from Tray 2 is requested.</li> </ul>	<p>The printer prompts you to load letter paper in Tray 1 because it is configured for letter paper.</p>
<p>The Tray Sequence is set to <b>MBF-1-2</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder is set to <i>Letter</i> paper and contains one sheet of paper.</li> <li>• All other trays contain Letter paper.</li> <li>• Letter paper from Tray 2 is requested.</li> </ul>	<p>The printer feeds the first page of the job from the 50 Sheet Bypass Tray (MBF) and subsequent pages from Tray 2.</p>
<p>The Tray Sequence is any setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All trays contain Letter paper.</li> <li>• Legal paper from Tray 2 is requested.</li> </ul>	<p>The printer prompts you to load legal paper in Tray 2.</p>




## Paper Size/Type Mismatch

Paper size/type mismatch occurs when the requested size is not available in the printer. This can be caused by running out of paper in a tray that is configured for the requested paper, or by requesting a paper that is not configured in the printer. The printer goes off-line under paper mismatch conditions. It automatically returns on-line and continues printing after the paper mismatch condition is resolved.

If a tray is configured for the requested paper, but the tray is out of paper, the display prompts you to load the requested paper (size and type) in the appropriate tray. After the tray is loaded, printing continues.

If the request is for paper that is not configured in the printer, you are prompted to load the requested paper in the first tray of the Tray Sequence setting.

If you do not want to load paper in the first tray of the Tray Sequence setting, two options are available:

- One of the trays may be loaded with the requested size paper and reconfigured via the Tray Menu to match the requested paper type. (See Table 3.10 on page 3-24 for instructions on using the Tray Menu.)
- **Value Up**  or **Value Down**  may be pressed to scroll through all the trays, displaying the size and type paper in each tray. If one of these alternate papers is acceptable, pressing **Enter**  will cause printing to continue on the new paper. Trays are searched in the order specified in the Tray Sequence setting.

# Offsetting Output

---

The 500 Sheet Face-down Bin supports offsetting output between successive jobs or multiple collated sets of a single job. Offsetting is controlled from the Control Panel (see page 3-46) or via CentreWare DP.

---



*The 200 Sheet Face-up Output Bin and the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator do not support offsetting.*

---

The following conditions must be met before offsetting occurs between jobs:

- The offset function occurs only between successive jobs that are both destined for the Face-down Bin.

For example, a print job may contain a banner sheet in PCL that precedes a PostScript print job. If they are both directed to the Face-down Bin, the banner sheet is offset from the PostScript job. If the banner sheet is directed to the Face-up Bin (no offset capability) and the PostScript job is directed to the Face-down Bin, offset does not occur between the banner sheet and the PostScript job. If, however, the next job is directed to the Face-down Bin, offset will occur between the PostScript job and the next job.

- The offset function occurs between successive jobs directed to the Face-down Bin only if the jobs contain data that results in a sheet being printed and delivered to the bin. For example, if a PCL job contains <ESCAPE>E sequences at the beginning of a job and there is no printable data separating these commands, the offset does not occur (even though these escape sequences are valid job boundaries).

## Using Custom Paper Sizes

---

In some cases, it is possible to print using custom (non-standard) paper sizes. The following factors must be considered:

- This capability is accessible only from the Multi Bypass Feeder or Envelope Feeder. Non-standard paper sizes cannot be used in regular paper trays.
- You must disable the printer's automatic paper size jam detection to prevent false messages from being reported. See below.
- Although you can physically load custom paper sizes into the Multi Bypass Feeder, and this paper will be fed into the printer, you may need to perform some page format steps within your application to ensure that the image is properly positioned on the paper. (An example of this is resetting page margin widths.) This is because PCL and PostScript format their output images only to defined paper sizes.

To print using custom paper sizes, first disable the printer's automatic paper size jam detection by setting the **MBF Size** to **Custom** in the Tray Menu. Then set the **Custom Size** item to the standard size to be used by PCL or PostScript to format the output image on the page. (In most cases, this will be the next larger standard paper size from the custom size being used.)



*If the leading edge width of the non-standard size being used differs from that of the standard size selected in the Custom Setting by more than 1/4 inch, it will not be possible to use the Duplex or Stapler options.*

---



*To prevent the printer from incorrectly loading standard paper from one of the regular input trays when the Custom Size setting is the same value as the auto-detected size in that other input source, you must exclude the Multi Bypass Feeder from the Tray Sequence setting and specifically select that the Multi Bypass Feeder as the input source.*

---

Refer to Table 1.34 for usage examples.

Table 1.34 Custom Paper Size Examples.

Custom Paper Size	Desired Input Source	Required Steps
8 x 10 in.	Multi Bypass Feeder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the application, format the page for Letter size paper, setting the margins to correctly position the image on 8 x 10" paper if overlaid by Letter size paper.</li> <li>2. Load the 8 x 10" paper in the Multi Bypass Feeder.</li> <li>3. Set the Tray Menu "MBF Size" to <i>Custom</i>.</li> <li>4. Set the "Custom Size" to <i>Letter (8.5 x 11")</i>.</li> <li>5. Set the "Tray Sequence" to a value that does not include the MBF (or set it to Off).</li> <li>6. Request "MBF" as the paper source and send the job to the printer.</li> </ol>
8.5 x 11 in. Short Edge Feed (SEF)	Multi Bypass Feeder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the application, format the page for Folio size paper (because Folio is a short-edge feed size on this printer), setting the margins to correctly position the image on the 11 inches to be used by this paper.</li> <li>2. Load the 8.5 x 11" paper into the Multi Bypass Feeder in the SEF direction.</li> <li>3. Set the Tray Menu <b>MBF Size</b> to <i>Custom</i>.</li> <li>4. Set the <b>Custom Size</b> to <i>Folio (8.5 x 13")</i>.</li> <li>5. Set the <b>Tray Sequence</b> item to value that does not include <b>MBF</b> (or set to <i>Off</i>).</li> <li>6. Request <b>MBF</b> as the paper source and send the print job.</li> </ol>

## Using the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator

---

The 10-bin Mailbox/Collator is an optional output device available for the printer. It handles all supported paper sizes, except A6 and envelopes, in 10 individually addressable bins at up to 100 sheets per bin.

### Mailbox Sorter Modes

There are two different Mailbox/Sorter modes provided by the 10-Bin Collator:

- **Mailbox Mode:** Each mailbox bin can be addressed individually using the job destination functionality contained in the printer driver.
- **Sorter Destination Mode:** The mailbox works like a copier sorter when multiple sets are printed. When up to 10 sets are requested, the first page is sent to Bin 1, the second set to Bin 2, and so on.

If more than 10 copies are selected, the entire job is sent to the Face Down Bin.

### Printing to the Mailbox/Collator

Using a printer driver, select a specific bin for the paper output destination for your job, then print your job. Selecting a bin enables you to send a job to that bin.

For information on setting a Mailbox bin as the printer's default output bin, see page 1-43.



## Duplex (Two-Sided) Printing

Once the optional Duplex Module is installed and Duplex printing is enabled in the Control Panel, you can print two-sided (duplex) jobs. Duplex printing can also be enabled from your printer driver.

Use only the size paper listed in Table 1.35 for two-sided jobs. Do not use envelopes, postcards, cardstock, transparencies, or label paper for duplex jobs.

**Table 1.35 Paper sizes used with the Duplex Module**

Paper Size	Weight
<b>A3</b> (297 x 420 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>A4</b> (210 x 297 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>A5</b> (148 x 210 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>B4-JIS</b> (257 x 364 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>B5-JIS</b> (182 x 257 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Statement</b> (5.5 x 8.5" / 140 x 216 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Executive</b> (7.25 x 10.5" / 216 x 279 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Letter</b> (8.5 x 11" / 216 x 279 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Folio</b> (8.5 x 13" / 216 x 330 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Legal</b> (8.5 x 14" / 216 x 356 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Ledger</b> (11 x 17" / 279 x 432 mm)	17-24 lb (64-90g/m <sup>2</sup> )

Refer to Chapter 2 of the *User Guide* for the proper orientation of drilled paper and letterhead when printing duplex.

## Print Orientation and Control Panel Settings

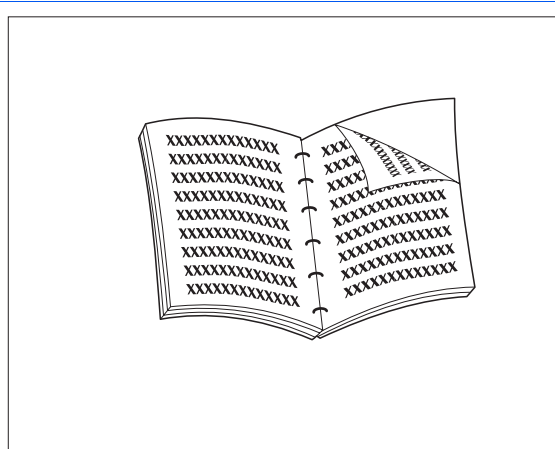
To ensure that duplex jobs print in the proper orientation, set the Duplex option (in the System Menu) to the appropriate setting (see page 1-39). The Duplex settings for both PCL and PostScript are:

Duplex = Off

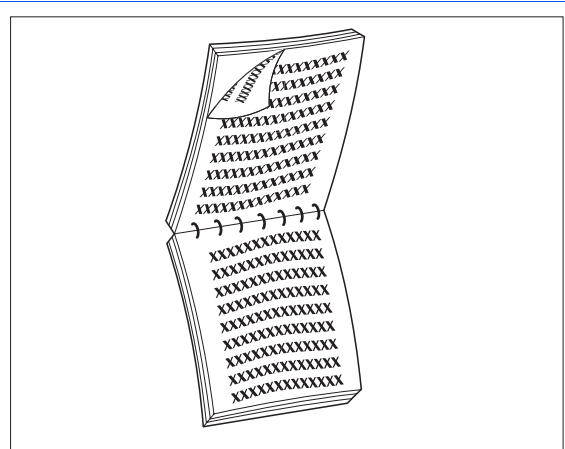
Duplex = Short Edge, or

Duplex = Long Edge

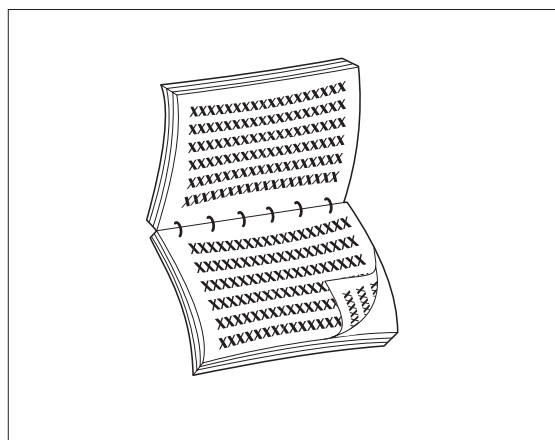
Figure 1.2 Duplex binding orientation and Control Panel menu settings



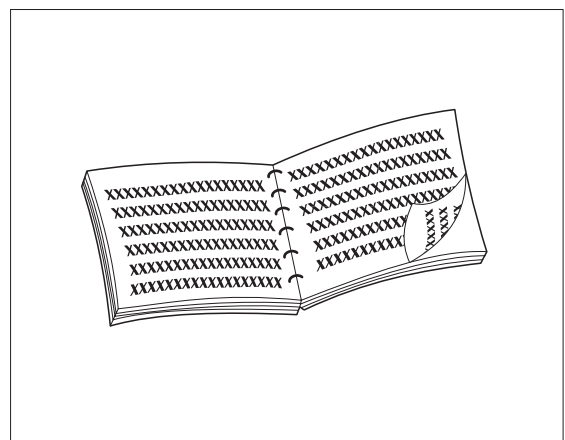
Portrait Orientation: Set Duplex to *Long Edge*.



Portrait Orientation: Set Duplex to *Short Edge*.



Landscape Orientation: Set Duplex to *Long Edge*.



Landscape Orientation: Set Duplex to *Short Edge*.

# Using the Finisher

---

## Features

The finisher option can be installed only on console versions of the printer (i.e., versions which have the 2,500 Sheet Feeder). It has three output bins with a total maximum capacity of 2,000 unstapled sheets, up to 667 unstapled sheets per bin. Stapled output can be sent to all three bins.



*Because it uses the same connector and occupies the same location as the Mailbox, the same printer can not support both a Finisher and a Mailbox simultaneously.*

---

## Built-in Stapler

The stapler can staple sets of up to 50 sheets. It has three stapling modes (Front for portrait, Back for landscape, and Dual for booklet mode). The customer-replaceable stapling unit contains 5,000 staples which are packaged as a supply item, in sets of three, for a total of 15,000 staples per package. The finisher comes with one staple cartridge of 5,000 staples.

## Capacity Handling

The finisher is programmed to ensure that there is enough space remaining in the bin to output a job of from two to 50 pages. Up to 50 sheets can be stapled.

Stapled sets are kept in a compiler bin and ejected once a complete set has been stapled. Output is delivered to the finisher bins face down only.

The finisher has an elevator that positions one of the three output bins to receive output from the compiler bin. The finisher home position is when Bin 2 receives output from the compiler bin. Finisher bin selection is made from the System Menu at the User Interface, via PCL commands or from printer drivers.

### Face-down Bin

When the finisher is installed, its transport reduces the capacity of the printer's Face-down Bin from 500 to 300 sheets.

### Job Offsetting

The finisher supports offsetting of printed jobs in all three bins. Job offsetting is configured either via the User Interface or through SNMP commands. Job offsetting is a system function; it cannot be configured from the printer drivers.

### Supported Paper Sizes

All sizes of paper can be sent to the finisher except A6 and Envelopes. Mixed sizes of paper can be sent to the finisher bins as long as all the paper within a single job is the same size. Mixed paper sizes **within the same job** cannot be compiled and stapled. See Table 1.36 on page 1-127 for supported paper sizes.

## Output Destination

With a finisher installed, the user may select the following output destinations: Face-down Bin, Face-up Bin, Finisher Bin 1, Finisher Bin 2, and Finisher Bin 3. Output destination can be set via the System Menu at the UI or by PCL and PJJ commands. See Table 2.4 on page B-7.

## Output Bin Sensing

Each finisher bin senses not only the height of each stack, but also the number of stapled sets delivered to each stack. When the number of stapled sets delivered to the bin reaches 100 for long edge feed (LEF) paper sizes, or 50 for short edge feed (SEF) paper sizes, as shown in Table 1.36 on page 1-127, the bin is reported as full.

## Bin Level Sensors

Finisher sensors can detect the following bin conditions:

- Empty
- 50%
- Full

When a bin is full and the stack height does not allow additional sets to be sent to it, the destination of additional sets directed to the full bin is determined by the Output Timeout system parameter in the printer's System Menu. See Table 1.14 on page 1-36.

## Safety Limitation

When Finisher Bin 3 is selected, the bins are raised to the highest position. In the interest of safety, they will only remain in this position for one minute following the last page delivered to bin 3. After one minute, the bins are lowered to align bin 2 with the output paper path.

## Unload Button

The Unload Button temporarily interrupts printing and places the finisher in the home position to allow the operator to remove output. It also signals the controller to sense stack height in the bins and resume printing after the stack has been removed. Figure 1.4 in Chapter 1 of the *User Guide* illustrates the position of the unload button.

## Bin Capacity

Each finisher Bin is capable of stacking up to 667 sheets of 20 lb. paper for long edge feed (LEF) paper sizes and 333 sheets for short edge feed (SEF) paper sizes.

The maximum stack height is decreased when stapled sets are delivered to each bin, since stapled sets affect the stability of the output stack.

Table 1.36 lists the supported paper sizes and the maximum capacity for each bin based upon whether the output is unstapled or stapled.

**Table 1.36 Maximum Capacity Per Bin**

Paper Size	Capacity Unstapled Sheets	Capacity Stapled Sets
<b>Letter</b> (8.5 x 11") LEF	667	100
<b>Statement</b> (5.5 x 8.5") LEF	667	100
<b>Executive</b> (7.25 x 10.5") LEF	667	100
<b>A4</b> (210 x 297mm) LEF	667	100
<b>A5</b> (148 x 210mm) LEF	667	100
<b>B5-JIS</b> (182 x 257 mm) LEF	667	100
<b>Legal</b> (8.5 x 14") SEF	333	50
<b>Folio</b> (8.5 x 13") SEF	333	50
<b>Ledger</b> (11 x 17") SEF	333	50
<b>A3</b> (287 x 420mm) SEF	333	50
<b>B4-JIS</b> (257 x 364 mm) SEF	333	50

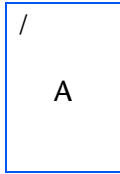
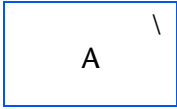
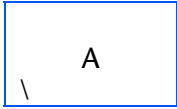
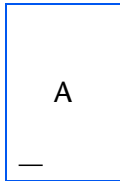
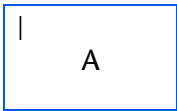
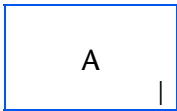
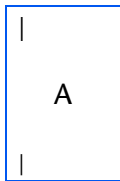
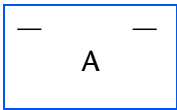
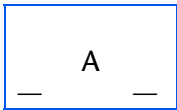
## Stapling Positions

Stapling positions are set in the System Menu at the User Interface (See Chapter 1 of the *System Administrator Guide*) or by PJJL commands. (See Table 2.4 on page B-7 and Table 2.5 on page B-8.)

### Letter, Statement, B5-JIS and Executive Paper

Figure 1.3 illustrates the approximate position of staples for Letter, Statement, B5-JIS and Executive paper in Portrait, Landscape, and Inverse Landscape Modes based upon the stapling position indicated in the left hand column.

**Figure 1.3** Stapling positions for Letter, Statement, B5-JIS and Executive paper

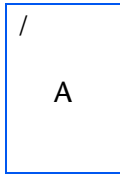
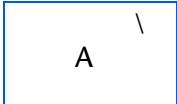
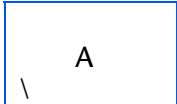
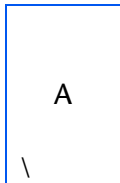
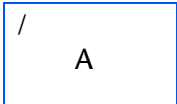
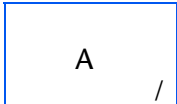
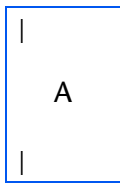
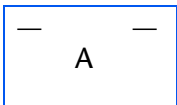
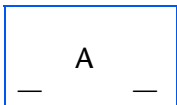
Stapling Position	Portrait	Landscape	Inverse Landscape
<b>Position 1</b>			
<b>Position 2</b>			
<b>Dual</b>			



## A4 Paper

Figure 1.4 illustrates the approximate position of staples for A4 paper in Portrait, Landscape, and Inverse Landscape Modes based upon the stapling position indicated in the left hand column.

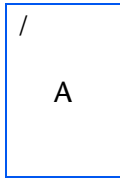
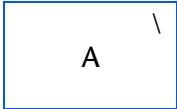
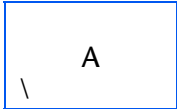
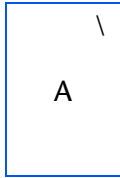
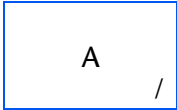
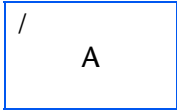
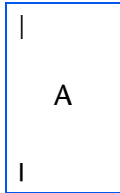
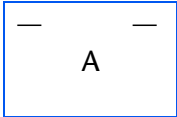
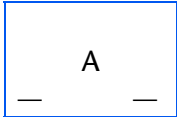
**Figure 1.4** Stapling positions for A4 paper

Stapling Position	Portrait	Landscape	Inverse Landscape
Position 1			
Position 2			
Dual			

## A5 Paper

Figure 1.5 illustrates the approximate position of staples for A5 paper in Portrait, Landscape, and Inverse Landscape Modes based upon the stapling position indicated in the left hand column.

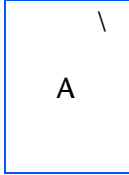
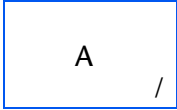
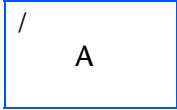
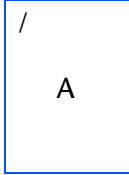
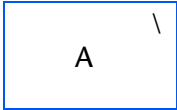
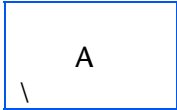
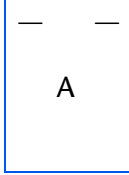
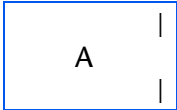
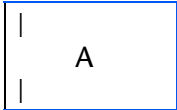
**Figure 1.5** Stapling positions for A5 paper

Stapling Position	Portrait	Landscape	Inverse Landscape
Position 1			
Position 2			
Dual			

## A3 Paper

Figure 1.6 illustrates the approximate position of staples for A3 paper in Portrait, Landscape, and Inverse Landscape Modes based upon the UI parameters indicated in the left hand column.

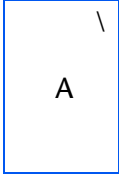
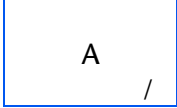
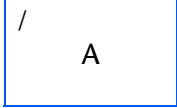
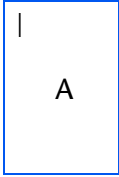
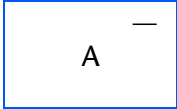
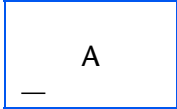
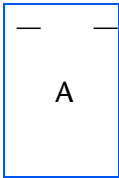
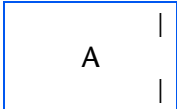
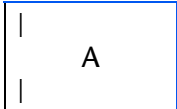
**Figure 1.6** Stapling positions for A3 paper

Stapling Position	Portrait	Landscape	Inverse Landscape
Position 1			
Position 2			
Dual			

## Ledger, B4-JIS, Legal and Folio Paper

Figure 1.7 illustrates the approximate position of staples for Ledger, B4-JIS, Legal and Folio paper in Portrait, Landscape, and Inverse Landscape Modes based upon the UI parameters indicated in the left hand column.

**Figure 1.7** Stapling positions for Ledger, B4-JIS, Legal and Folio paper

Stapling Position	Portrait	Landscape	Inverse Landscape
Position 1			
Position 2			
Dual			

## **Job Offsetting**

The finisher, like the Face-down Bin, supports offsetting output between successive jobs or multiple collated sets of a single job. A system parameter configures the offset function to OFF (no offset), or ON (toggle offset portion of sequential jobs or multiple collated sets of a single job.)

Job offset is a system function that cannot be configured by the driver. It is configured via the User Interface or via SNMP commands.

## Output Timeout

Table 1.37 defines printer operation, based upon the Output Timeout setting, when the requested finisher bin is full. The Output Timeout setting can be selected from the System Menu. If the Output Timeout setting allows printed output to be redirected to an alternative bin, that bin is used until the original output bin again becomes available. This occurs when the original requested finisher bin is emptied. Printing is redirected to the original bin at the next job boundary. If the current job was re-directed to an alternative bin, the re-direction remains in effect until the last page of the job becomes available.

**Table 1.37 Output timeout operation**

Destination Requested	Timeout Value	Action
Finisher Bin 1, 2, or 3	OFF	Display shows "Bin Full". Printer waits until the Bin is emptied.
Finisher Bin 1	0	Immediately changes destination to Bin 2. If Bin 2 is full, output is directed to Bin 3.
Finisher Bin 1	5, 10, 30, or 60 seconds	Display shows "Bin Full" until the Timeout expires. After the Timeout expires, subsequent pages are directed to Bin 2. If Bin 2 is full, output is directed to Bin 3.
Finisher Bin 2	0	Immediately changes destination to Bin 3. If Bin 3 is full, output is directed to Bin 1.
Finisher Bin 2	5, 10, 30, or 60 seconds	Display shows "Bin Full" until the Timeout expires. After the Timeout expires, subsequent pages are directed to Bin 3. If Bin 3 is full, output is directed to Bin 1.
Finisher Bin 3	0	Immediately changes destination to Bin 1. If Bin 1 is full, output is directed to Bin 2.
Finisher Bin 3	5, 10, 30, or 60 seconds	Display shows "Bin Full" until the Timeout expires. After the Timeout expires, subsequent pages are directed to Bin 1. If Bin 1 is full, output is directed to Bin 2.

## Paper Output Exception Conditions

It is possible to send a combination of commands to select an output destination or feature that cannot be processed by the printer. Table 1.38 describes printer operations when these exceptions occur.

**Table 1.38** Paper output exception conditions

Condition	Printer Operation
Stapling is selected without the finisher destination.	Destination is ignored. Stapling is ignored.
Stapling is selected and the job exceeds 50 pages.	Stapling is ignored. Output is sent to the destination bin.
Stapling is selected for a single page job.	Stapling is ignored. Output is sent to the destination bin.
Stapling is selected but the staple cartridge is empty or not installed.	An "Out of Staples" message appears and printing continues.
Finisher bin is full.	Diverts output to alternative finisher bin after timeout specified in Output Timeout option on the User Interface System Menu.
The destination is changed either to or from one of the finisher Bins that was not the destination for the first page in the job.	Ignores the changes in the destination and continues to deliver pages to the destination in effect for the first page of the job.
One of the finisher Bins is selected as the destination and the duplex mode is changed within the job.	All pages currently in the compiler bin are ejected into the finisher bin unstapled. The remainder of the document is directed to the compiler bin with the new duplex mode, until the end of the job is reached, or until another change in duplex mode occurs.







# 2

## *Managing Printer Usage*

<i>Using CentreWare DP .....</i>	<i>2-2</i>
<i>CentreWare Internet Services .....</i>	<i>2-4</i>
<i>PCL Emulation Printer Driver .....</i>	<i>2-5</i>
<i>PostScript Printer Drivers .....</i>	<i>2-6</i>
<i>Driver Features .....</i>	<i>2-7</i>
<i>Base Printer Fonts .....</i>	<i>2-9</i>
<i>PostScript Fonts .....</i>	<i>2-10</i>

## Using CentreWare DP

CentreWare DP is easy-to-use printer management software. Through the ease of point-and-click navigation, you can install, connect, and configure the printer on a network, quickly and easily.

CentreWare DP provides network administrators with simplified setup procedures and effortless management of networked printers.

CentreWare DP also provides easily available Help information for questions you may have.

Table 2.1 lists CentreWare DP key features and benefits. For more specific information about CentreWare DP use and operation, see “The CentreWare DP User Guide.”

**Table 2.1 CentreWare DP key features and benefits**

Feature	Benefit
<b>Setup Wizard</b>	Provides a step-by-step guide to get your printer quickly up and running on the network.
<b>Advanced Setup</b>	Provides a tool to service multiple file servers and queues.
<b>Instant Status</b>	Allows you to select a printer from the Printer List to see what that printer is doing at any given time.
<b>Remote Configuration and Management</b>	Allows you to do most configuration and monitoring tasks from your workstation.
<b>Printer Upgrades</b>	Allows you to upgrade your printer from your workstation.

Centroware Sun OS/Solaris Services are also available to allow you to set up queues and also contain your printer Drivers for Sun OS/Solaris.

All the CentreWare software and documentation is on your Client Services Software CD.

## CentreWare Internet Services

---

CentreWare Internet Services is an interactive service that extends the capabilities of CentreWare DP using Internet technology as the platform. It provides another option for implementing advanced services for the installation, configuration, and management of your printer. Each of the features in CentreWare Internet Services can be accessed through familiar client-resident software interfaces, such as Netscape Navigator or Microsoft Internet Explorer browsers. Through a web browser, users and system administrators will be able to monitor the status of the printer, print HTML-based documents, and access context sensitive on-line assistance.

For system administrators, CentreWare Internet Services will provide a faster and more productive way to install and upgrade software on your printer and a wide range of supporting information on the Internet.

### Setup

To set up your printer for Internet/Intranet access, you will need to do the following:

- Configure an IP address for the printer on your network. See “*IP Address*” (page 1-68 for Ethernet or page 1-73 for Token Ring).
- Enable the embedded HTTP server at the Control Panel. See “*HTTP Enable*” (page 1-66 for Ethernet or page 1-73 for Token Ring).

To use the MaiLinx Mail Send and Receive capability, you will need to establish a mail account for the printer and may need to install and configure the Xerox Mail Port Monitor.



*See the Technical Information Guide, the CentreWare Internet Services User Guide, and on-line help for more information on the operation and use of CentreWare Internet Services.*

---

# PCL Emulation Printer Driver

---

The printer supports the PCL printer drivers listed in Table 2.2. To take full advantage of all the printer's features when printing PCL jobs, install the appropriate PCL emulation printer driver(s).

**Table 2.2 PCL Emulation printer drivers**

Environment	Printer Driver
Windows	Windows 95/98 Windows NT 4.0

## PostScript Printer Drivers

---

The printer supports the PostScript drivers listed in Table 2.3. To take full advantage of all the printer's features when printing PostScript jobs, install the appropriate printer driver(s).

**Table 2.3 PostScript printer drivers**

Environment	Printer Driver
<b>Windows</b>	Windows 95/98 Windows NT 3.5.1 Windows NT 4.0
<b>IBM OS/2</b>	OS/2 Ver. 2.1 OS/2 WARP
<b>Macintosh</b>	System 7.x, 8.x
<b>UNIX</b> (Sun Solaris, Sun OS, SCO UNIX, IBM AIX, HP-UX, DEC)	Sun Solaris 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.6 Sun OS 4.14 IBM AIX 4.2.x, 4.3x HP-UX 10.x, 11.x

# Driver Features

---

Printer drivers will support the following standard features:

- Input tray/Output bin selection
- Duplex selection
- Paper size, orientation and media
- Number of copies
- Collating

Table 2.4 on page 2-8 lists a general overview of features supported by the printer drivers. Actual driver capabilities can be determined by invoking specific drivers.

Uni Drivers are universal drivers while custom devices are printer-specific drivers.



*Custom drivers are recommended for use with the printer since they generally support the most features.*

*For more complete descriptions of drivers and their functionality, use the drivers' on-line help. Actual driver capabilities may be determined by invoking the specific drivers.*

---

Table 2.4 Printer driver features

Driver	Feature							
	Secure Printing	Proof Printing	Cover Sheets	Edge-to-Edge	N-Up	Water-mark	Overlay	Duplex
<b>PCL 5e</b>								
Windows 95/98	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Windows NT 4.0	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
<b>PCL 6</b>								
Windows 95/98	C	C	C	C	C	C	N	C
Windows NT 4.0	C	C	C	C	C	C	N	C
<b>PostScript</b>								
Windows 95/98	C	C	C	C	C	C	N	C
Windows NT 4.0	C	C	C	C	C	C	N	C
<b>MAC PS</b>	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
<b>OS/2 PS</b>	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
<b>UNIX PS</b>								
Sun Solaris 2.5, 2.5.1, 2.6	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Sun OS 4.14	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
IBM AIX, 4.2.x, 4.3.x	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
HP-UX 10.x, 11.x	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
C = Feature only available with printer's custom driver. N = Feature not available.								



## Base Printer Fonts

The printer is equipped with resident fonts (see Table 2.5) that can be used for PCL jobs:

- 10 TrueType scalable typefaces
- 35 Intellifont scalable typefaces
- One Bitmap typeface (Line Printer)

**Table 2.5** Base printer fonts

TrueType Fonts	Intellifonts	
Arial	Albertus <sup>®</sup> Medium	Garamond Antiqua
Arial Bold	Albertus Extra Bold	Garamond Halbfett (Bold)
Arial Italic	Antique Olive	Garamond Kursiv Italic)
Arial Bold Italic	Antique Olive Bold	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett (Bold Italic)
Times New Roman	Antique Olive Italic	Letter Gothic
Times New Roman Bold	CG Omega	Letter Gothic Bold
Times New Roman Italic	CG Omega Bold	Letter Gothic Italic
Times New Roman Bold Italic	CG Omega Bold Italic	Marigold
Symbol	CG Omega Italic	Univers <sup>®</sup> Bold
Wingdings	CG Times	Univers Bold Italic
	CG Times Bold	Univers Bold Condensed
	CG Times Bold Italic	Univers Bold Condensed Italic
	CG Times Italic	Univers Medium
	Clarendon Condensed Bold	Univers Medium Italic
	Coronet	Univers Medium Condensed
	Courier	Univers Medium Condensed Italic
	Courier Bold	
	Courier Italic	
	Courier Bold Italic	

To print a PCL Font List, see “PCL Font List” (page 1-98).

# PostScript Fonts

There are 39 resident PostScript fonts available for printing PostScript jobs (as shown in Table 2.6).

**Table 2.6 PostScript fonts**

AvantGarde-Book	Helvetica	Palatino-Bold
AvantGarde-BookOblique	Helvetica-Bold	Palatino-BoldItalic
AvantGarde-Demi	Helvetica-BoldOblique	Palatino-Italic
AvantGarde-DemiOblique	Helvetica-Condensed	Palatino-Roman
Bookman-Demi	Helvetica-Condensed-Bold	Symbol
Bookman-DemItalic	Helvetica-Condensed-BoldOblique	Times-Bold
Bookman-Light	Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique	Times-BoldItalic
Bookman-LightItalic	Helvetica-Narrow	Times-Italic
Courier	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold	Times-Roman
Courier-Bold	Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique	Zapf Chancery-MediumItalic
Courier-BoldOblique	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique	Zapf Dingbats
Courier-Oblique	Helvetica-Oblique	
	NewCenturySchlbk-Bold	
	NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic	
	NewCenturySchlbk-Italic	
	NewCenturySchlbk-Roman	

To print a PostScript Font List, see “PS Font List” (page 1-98).



# 3

## *Using the Hard Disk Drive and Flash Memory*

<i>Hard Drive and Flash Memory Considerations</i> .....	3-2
<i>Disk Initialization</i> .....	3-2
<i>Flash Initialization</i> .....	3-2
<i>Downloading Fonts, Forms and Macros</i> .....	3-3
<i>Font Download Utility</i> .....	3-3
<i>PCL 5e Driver</i> .....	3-4
<i>FSDOWNLOAD Command</i> .....	3-5
<i>FSDELETE Command</i> .....	3-8
<i>Using the Hard Disk Drive for Secure and Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-9
<i>Creating Secure Jobs</i> .....	3-9
<i>Creating Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-11
<i>Printing or Deleting Secure or Proof Jobs</i> .....	3-13

# Hard Drive and Flash Memory Considerations

---

If you install the optional hard drive in the printer, it will significantly increase the amount of memory available for processing jobs and storing downloaded information (such as fonts, forms, overlays (macros) and secure jobs).

The hard disk is used for the following:

- Support of the PostScript file system.
- Support of the PJJL/PCL file system.
- Receiving raw (i.e., unprocessed) data for secure jobs, proof jobs, and collated copy jobs.
- Downloading fonts, forms, and overlays.

The optional flash memory may also be used for downloaded fonts and macros.

## Disk Initialization

The disk is preformatted and requires no initialization. The disk may be returned to its initial state, with no loaded fonts, overlays or secure jobs, by selecting the Init Disk item from the Reset Menu.

## Flash Initialization

Flash memory requires formatting before the first use. Formatting may be done by selecting the **Flash Format** item from the Reset Menu.

# Downloading Fonts, Forms and Macros

---

The printer has a total of 35 Intellifonts, 35 PostScript Type 1, 10 TrueType, and 1 bitmap fonts. Additional fonts can be downloaded to the printer with the Font download Utility, the PCL 5e driver, or PjL commands.

## Font Download Utility

Font Download Utility, a Windows based graphical user interface tool downloads fonts (single/double byte) to the optional hard disk or Flash Memory. In PostScript, the supported font types are Type 1, Type 2, and Forms. In PCL, the supported font types are HP-PCL fonts (Bitmap, Scalable and Macro). Windows TrueType fonts can also be downloaded in PostScript (Type 1 ASCII).

This utility can print a list of the fonts currently loaded on the printer hard disk and Flash Memory. This utility is supported on Windows 95/95, NT4.0, and Windows 2000. It can be installed from the Product CD.



*Printer drivers have no knowledge of the fonts downloaded by the Font Download Utility.*

---

## PCL 5e Driver

The printer drivers provide you with the ability to download fonts and PCL 5e macros to the printer.

Fonts, forms and macros can be downloaded to printer memory, to the optional hard drive or to optional flash memory via drivers.

- To download fonts you must first install the appropriate Windows 3.1, Windows 95/98, Macintosh, Windows NT, or UNIX drivers. To download macros, you must install the Windows PCL 5e driver.
- Fonts downloaded to the hard drive are stored in the PCL Fonts and PS Fonts directories. Macros downloaded to the hard drive are stored in the PCL Macros directory. PCL fonts, forms and macros stored in these directories remain there until you delete them. They are not cleared from the hard disk when the printer is powered off. You can only delete a macro from the hard disk if you know the name of the macro. Since you cannot print a list of macros as you can for fonts, it is important to keep a record of all downloaded macros. Then, use the PJI FSDELETE command to delete fonts, forms and macros.
- “Temporary” fonts/forms/macros downloaded to printer memory on a job per job basis are cleared from the printer's memory after each job.
- “Permanent” fonts downloaded to printer memory are cleared from memory whenever the printer is powered off. When the printer switches PDLs, its automatic State Saving feature saves all fonts and macros.

In addition to downloading through drivers, the printer will support downloading of fonts, forms and macros to its disk or flash memory by the use of the PJI command FSDOWNLOAD. These files may be deleted from the hard drive by the PJI command FSDELETE.

## FSDOWNLOAD Command

The FSDOWNLOAD command is used to download fonts or macros to the printer's file system. If a file with the same name exists, the downloaded file overwrites it.

### Syntax

```
@PJL FSDOWNLOAD FORMAT:BINARY [SIZE=int] [NAME = "pathname"] [<CR>]
<LF><binary data><ESC>%-12345X
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Functional Range	Default
SIZE= <i>integer</i>	0 to 2 <sup>31</sup> - 1	N/A
NAME=" <i>pathname</i> "	ASCII 01 thru 255	N/A

**SIZE = *integer*** — The size variable indicates the number of bytes in the file to be downloaded. The size indicates the number of bytes immediately following the <LF> to the next UEL command.

**NAME = "*pathname*"** — where "*pathname*" = 0:\pcl\fonts\*<fontname>* to download a font named "*fontname*" to the printer or = 0:\pcl\macros\*<macroname>* to download a macro named "*macroname*" to the printer. *<fontname>*/*<macroname>* can be any combination of up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**<binary data>** — This is the binary file data to be downloaded, such as font files and macro data.



*Use of 1 rather than 0 in the "pathname" will download the font or macro to the Flash memory rather than to the hard drive.*

The following is a sequence of commands that can be sent to the printer to download a macro to the disk. In this example, the macro is named "a\_macro."

```
<ESC>%-12345X @PJL<CR><LF>  
@PJL FSDOWNLOAD FORMAT:BINARY NAME ="0:\pcl\macros\a_macro" SIZE=29<CR><LF>  
<ESC>*p900x1500YThis is the macro <ESC>%-12345X
```

In this example:

- <ESC>%-12345X is the PJI UEL command which starts this sequence.
- @PJL<CR><LF> is the mandatory PJI command following the UEL command.
- @PJL FSDOWNLOAD... downloads a macro of 29 bytes named "a\_macro."
- The phrase "This is the macro" is positioned at x=900 and y=1500 by this macro.
- <ESC>%-12345X is the UEL command which ends this sequence.

Executing this macro requires the following PCL sequence:

<ESC>&n8W<HEX'04'>new_mac<CR,LF>	Sets the current macro ID to the string ID "new_mac"
<ESC>&n8W<HEX'05'>a_macro<CR,LF>	Associates the current macro ID with the supplied string ID
<ESC>&f2x<CR,LF>	Executes this macro

Notes:

- The macro ID must be the same case as in the original download command.
- The byte count (after the "n" and before the "W") must equal the ID byte count plus 1.



The following is a sequence of commands that can be sent to the printer to download a font to the disk.

```
<ESC>%-12345X @PJL<CR><LF>
@PJL FSDOWNLOAD FORMAT:BINAR Y NAME ="0:\pcl\fonts\font1" SIZE=XX<CR><LF>
<binary data><ESC>%-12345X
```

In this example:

- <ESC>%-12345X is the P J L U E L command which starts this sequence.
- @P J L <CR><LF> is the mandatory P J L command following the U E L command.
- @P J L F S D O W N L O A D . . . downloads a font named "font1" that is "XX" bytes in size.
- <ESC>%-12345X is the U E L command which ends this sequence.
- Invoking this font requires the following P C L sequence:

<ESC>&n6W<HEX'00'>font2<CR,LF>	Sets the current font ID to the given string ID "font2"
<ESC>&n6W<HEX'01'>font1<CR,LF>	Associates the current font ID with the string ID "font1"
<ESC>&n6W<HEX'02'>font1<CR,LF>	Selects the font referred to as "font1" for the primary font

Notes:

- The case of the string ID must be the same as the case of the font name in the FSDOWNLOAD command.

The byte count ("6" in the above example) must equal the string ID byte count plus 1.

## FSDELETE Command

The FSDELETE command is used to delete files from the printer's file system.

**Syntax** @PJL FSDELETE NAME = "*pathname*" [<CR>] <LF>

Parameter	Functional Range	Default
NAME=" <i>pathname</i> "	ASCII 01 thru 255	N/A

**NAME** = "*pathname*" — where "*pathname*" has the same parameters as the FSDOWNLOAD command (see page 3-5).

## Using the Hard Disk Drive for Secure and Proof Jobs

---

Secure, collated copy, and proof jobs that have been submitted to the printer are stored in PCL or PostScript format on the Hard Disk Drive. These secure and proof jobs can be printed (or deleted) through the Password Menu where you enter the 4-digit password for the job or jobs to be printed. Procedures for printing or deleting secure jobs are listed in Table 3.8 on page 3-21.

The secure or proof job is placed at the top of the print queue, and will print following completion of the currently printing job. If more than one job is requested, jobs are placed on the print queue in the order requested. Secure or proof jobs having the same priority are printed on a first in, first out basis.

### Creating Secure Jobs

Secure printing delays printing of a job until a password associated with the job is entered at the printer's Control Panel. Entering the password at the Control Panel will provide access to only those jobs sent with that password.

Secure jobs are normally created in PCL and PostScript by choosing the feature in a driver. When not using a driver, secure jobs may be created by preceding the job with the following PJP commands:

```
@PJP XSECUREJOB  
@PJP XJOBPASSWORD = "number"
```

These commands must be immediately followed by a standard PJP "JOB" command that includes the "jobname."

Job names can be up to 16 alphanumeric characters and passwords must contain four numeric characters (0-7). The printer assigns a default job name if no name or a name with a syntax error is used. The job name is displayed on the Control Panel Password menu when the associated password is entered. If a password is not assigned or the password contains syntax errors, the job is not printed and is discarded.

The following example creates a Secure Job named "Bond" with a password of 0007:

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL XSECUREJOB
@PJL XJOBPASSWORD = 0007
@PJL JOB NAME = "Bond"
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL
...PCL file...
<ESC>%-012345X@PJL EOJ
<ESC>%-012345X
```

The printer processes all data following the @PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL command as part of the Secure Job named "Bond." The job is stored on the hard disk under the name "Bond" with a password of "0007" as defined in the @PJL XJOBPASSWORD command. The @PJL EOJ command signifies the end of the secure job. The EOJ command should be followed by a UEL command.

## Creating Proof Jobs

Proof printing lets you print a single copy of a multiple copy job. You assign a password and copy count at your workstation or computer before printing. The first set is printed immediately. You can then go to the printer and proofread (proof) the first set. Depending on the outcome of the proofing, you can then decide either to continue printing the sets or to delete the job after entering your password on the Printer Control Panel.

Proof jobs, if not sent by a driver with the proof job feature, may be invoked in both PCL and PostScript by preceding the job with the following PJL commands:

```
@PJL XPROOFJOB  
@PJL XJOBPASSWORD = number
```

These commands must be immediately followed by a standard PJL “JOB” command that includes the “jobname”.

The printer continues processing all subsequent data as part of the proof job of name “jobname.” The proof job is stored with the name “jobname” and associated with the password defined in the PJL XJOBPASSWORD command. The proof job ends when the PJL End of Job command is received (i.e., @PJL EOJ). The “EOJ” command should be followed by a UEL.

The job name is limited to 16 alphanumeric characters in the range ASCII 30 through ASCII 255, <SP> and <HT>. The password must contain four numeric characters in the range ASCII 48 through ASCII 55. The printer assigns a default job name if no name or a name with a syntax error is called out. The job name is the name displayed on the Control Panel Password Menu when the associated password is entered. If no password is assigned or there is a password syntax error, the entire job is printed immediately and is not stored as a proof job.

The following example creates a PCL proof job with the name "Sample" associated with password 7777 requesting five collated sets in addition to the proof copy.

```
<ESC>%-12345X@PJL XPROOFJOB
@PJL XJOBPASSWORD = 7777
@PJL JOB NAME = "Sample"
@PJL ENTER LANGUAGE = PCL
@PJL SET QTY = 5
...PCL file...
<ESC>%-012345X@PJL EOJ
<ESC>%-012345X.
```

## Printing or Deleting Secure or Proof Jobs

Secure or proof jobs may be printed or deleted by using the Password Menu. See page 1-17. They may also be deleted by using the Delete Jobs function. See page 1-101.

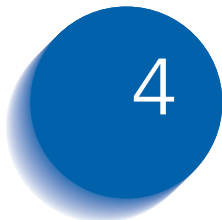


*Collated set jobs can be created in the same manner as proof or secure jobs by using the “Select Collated Sets” PjL command (@PJL SET QTY...) described in Appendix B: Unique Printer Commands.*

---







## ***Maintaining the Printer***

<i>Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge</i> .....	4-2
<i>Standard Configuration</i> .....	4-3
<i>Duplex Configuration</i> .....	4-6
<i>Installing the Maintenance Kit</i> .....	4-9
<i>Cleaning the Printer</i> .....	4-21
<i>Exterior Cleaning</i> .....	4-22
<i>Interior Cleaning</i> .....	4-23

# Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge

---

This section describes how to replace the printer Laser Print Cartridge in both a standard configuration printer and a printer with a Duplex Module attached.



- *Do not expose the Laser Print Cartridge to direct sunlight or artificial light for more than 15 minutes. Overexposure will permanently damage the photosensitive imaging drum.*
- *Do not open the drum shutter or touch the green imaging drum surface.*
- *Be sure to shake the Laser Print Cartridge as directed to distribute the toner inside the cartridge. Print quality may be degraded if the toner is not evenly distributed. If the toner has not been properly freed by shaking the cartridge, you may hear a noise when powering on the printer, and the Laser Print Cartridge may be damaged.*



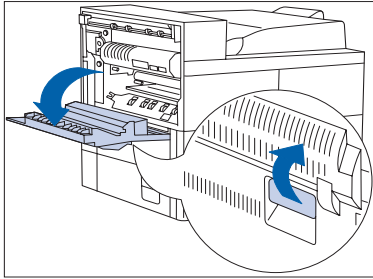
*Never touch the Fuser area inside the printer (where a label indicates high temperature).*

If your printer does not have a Duplex Module installed, go to the section “*Standard Configuration*” (page 4-3).

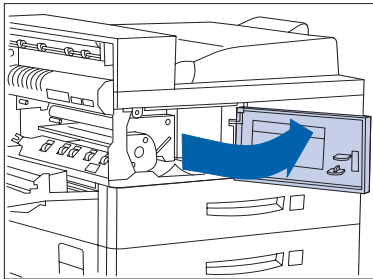
If your printer has the Duplex Module installed, go to the section “*Duplex Configuration*” (page 4-6).

## Standard Configuration

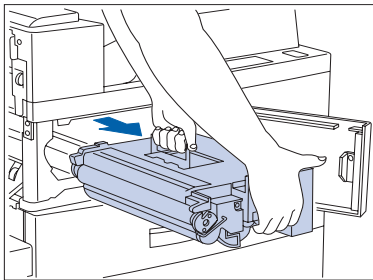
Follow this procedure to replace the Laser Print Cartridge on a standard configuration printer.



**1** Open Door A.



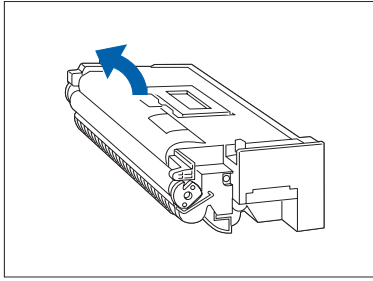
**2** Open the front cover (which is spring loaded; you must hold it open or it will shut).



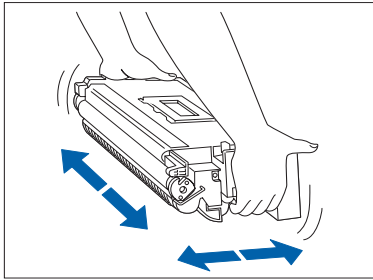
**3** Remove the Laser Print Cartridge. Gently slide it out with the amber handle and then lift it with the top handle.

Wrap the used Laser Print Cartridge in its original packing and return it as per directions in the packaging.

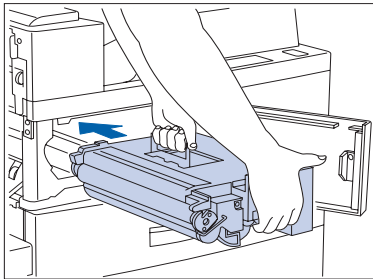
## Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge



- 4 Remove the new Laser Print Cartridge from its package and pull out the protective paper sheet from the drum shutter.



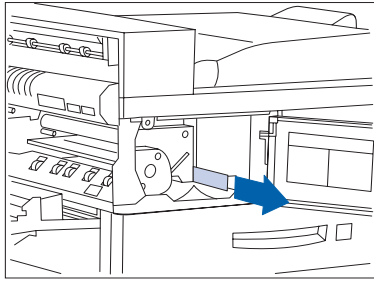
- 5 Hold the Laser Print Cartridge horizontally and gently shake it 5 to 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.



- 6 Hold the amber handle with one hand and gently push the Laser Print Cartridge all the way into the printer.



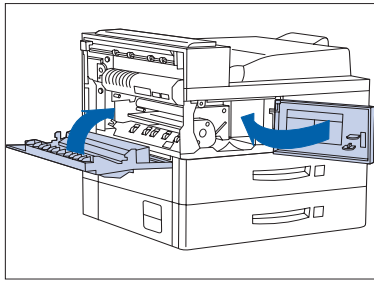
**Do not touch any parts inside the printer. Make sure the cartridge is firmly seated in the printer.**



- 7** Gently pull the sealing tape straight out in the direction of the arrow.



If the tape is pulled out at an angle, it may break.



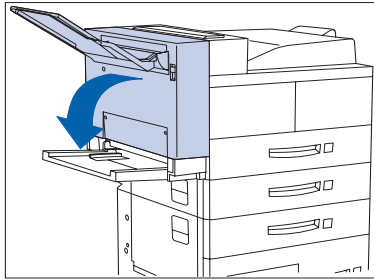
- 8** Close the front cover and Door A.



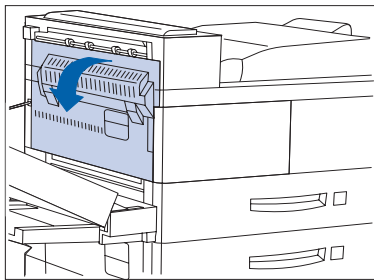
When closing Door A, follow the instruction label on the door for the correct location at which to push the door closed.

## Duplex Configuration

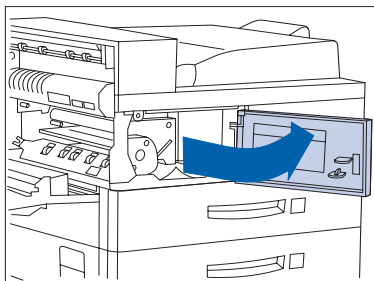
Follow this procedure to replace the Laser Print Cartridge on a printer with the Duplex Module installed.



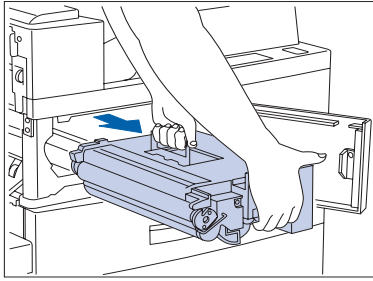
- 1 Open the Duplex Module by pulling on its latch.



- 2 Open Door A.

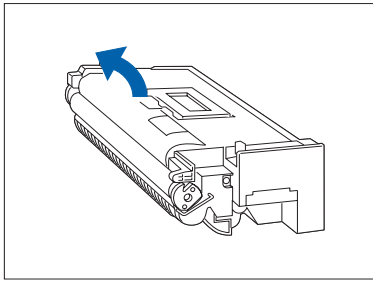


- 3 Open the front cover (which is spring loaded; you must hold it open or it will shut).

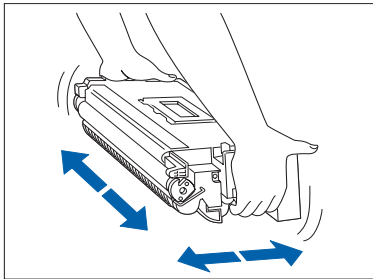


- 4** Remove the Laser Print Cartridge. Gently slide it out with the amber handle and then lift it with the top handle.

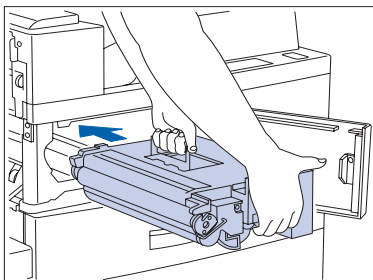
Wrap the used Laser Print Cartridge in its original packing and return it as per directions in the packaging.



- 5** Remove the new Laser Print Cartridge from its package and pull out the protective paper sheet from the drum shutter.



- 6** Hold the Laser Print Cartridge horizontally and gently shake it 5 to 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

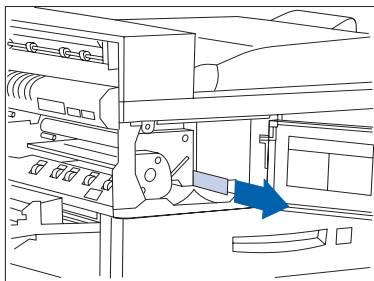


- 7** Hold the amber handle with one hand and gently push the Laser Print Cartridge all the way into the printer.



**Do not touch any parts inside the printer. Make sure the cartridge is firmly seated in the printer.**

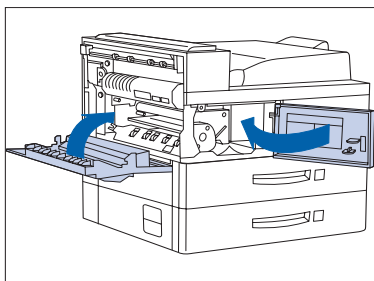
## Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge



- 8** Gently pull the sealing tape straight out in the direction of the arrow.



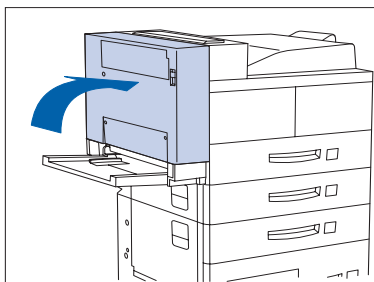
If the tape is pulled out at an angle, it may break.



- 9** Close the front cover and Door A.



When closing Door A, follow the instruction label on the door for the correct location at which to push the door closed.



- 10** Close the Duplex Module.



## Installing the Maintenance Kit

---

The Maintenance Kit is comprised of these items:

- Fuser Cartridge
- Bias Transfer Roll (BTR)
- 15 feedrolls (three for each paper input tray)

The Fuser Cartridge, feedrolls and BTR have expected useful lives of 300,000 impressions. Printing can continue beyond this point. However, to ensure optimum print quality the Maintenance Kit should be replaced as soon as possible after 300,000 impressions from the previous kit installation. To ensure optimum print quality you should order and replace the Maintenance Kit as soon as possible.

This section describes how to replace the Maintenance Kit.



*All three items of the Maintenance Kit should be replaced at the same time to maintain a consistent maintenance cycle. It is your responsibility to install the Maintenance Kit to keep the machine in optimal condition. It is also your responsibility to determine when this kit installation is required. Your service representative can be called to install this kit for a fee.*

*Loose toner may get on your hands during this procedure. You can use the supplied cleaning pad to clean your hands after completing the installation.*

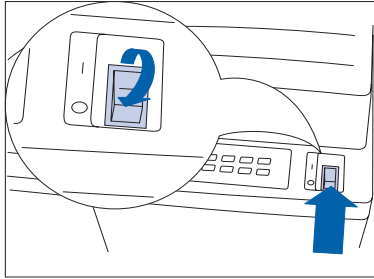


***The Fuser area becomes extremely hot during use of the printer. Be sure to power OFF the printer and let it cool for at least 15 minutes before replacing the Fuser Cartridge.***

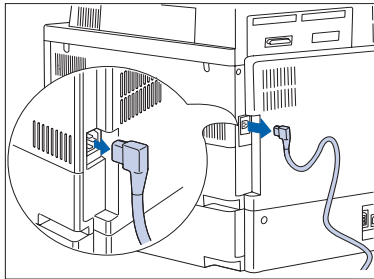
---

## Replacing the Maintenance Kit

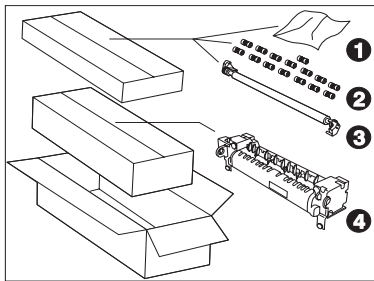
These instructions are also packaged with the kit.



- 1 Power OFF the printer.



- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

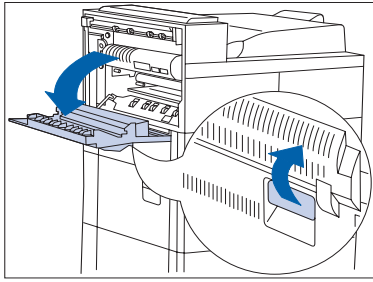


- 3 While the printer is cooling, unpack the Maintenance Kit and gather its parts:

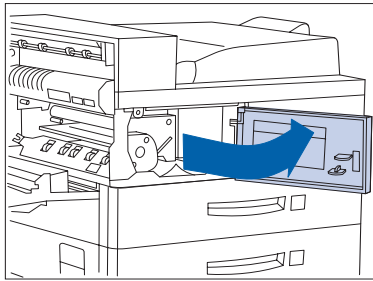
- 1 Cleaning Pad
- 2 Feedrolls (15)
- 3 BTR (Bias Transfer Roll)
- 4 Fuser Cartridge



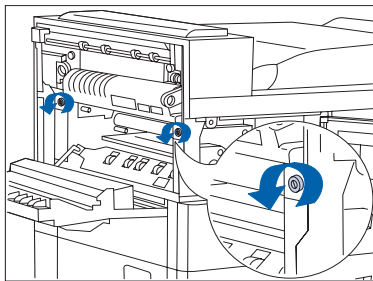
Wait at least 15 minutes for the printer to cool off before proceeding with the next step.



4 Open Door A.



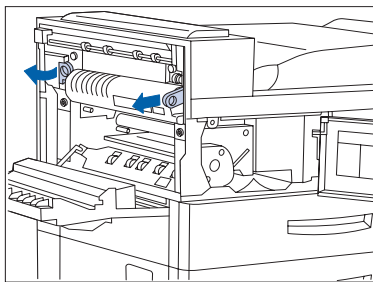
5 Open the front cover.



6 Loosen the two locking screws by turning them counterclockwise.

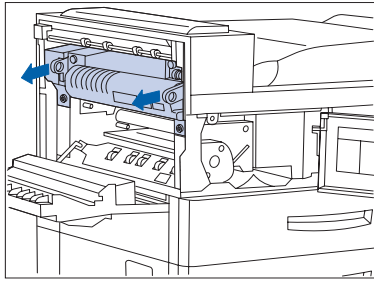


*You cannot remove the screws completely.*

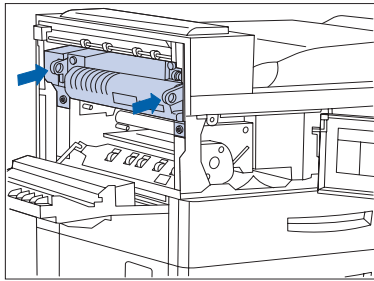


7 Pull out the amber rings.

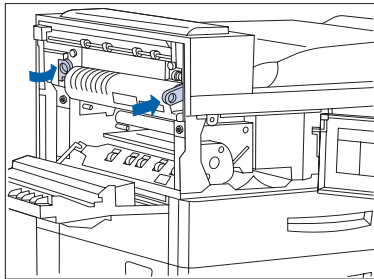
## Installing the Maintenance Kit



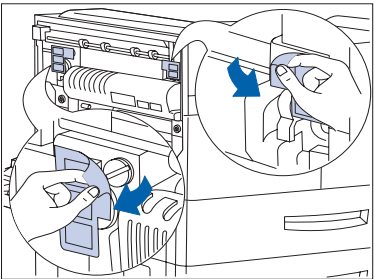
**8** Pull out the Fuser Cartridge by the two rings.



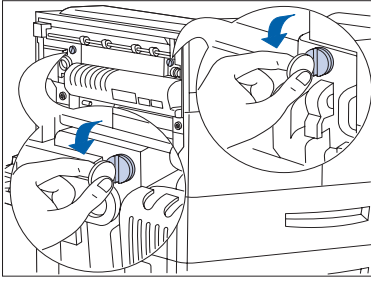
**9** Remove the new Fuser Cartridge from its packaging and, holding it by the two rings, push it into the printer.



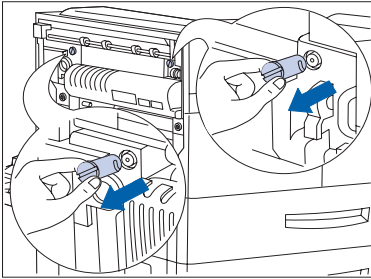
**10** Push in the amber rings.



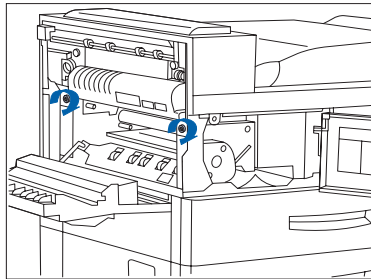
**11** Peel the labels off the left and right ends of the Fuser Cartridge to expose the silver screws underneath. Set the labels aside for reference.



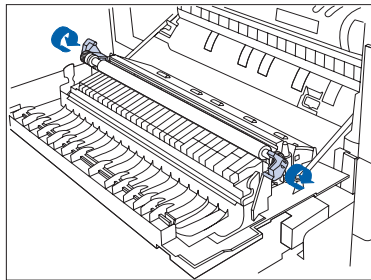
- 12** Using a medium size coin turn the silver screws on the left and right ends of the Fuser Cartridge counterclockwise.



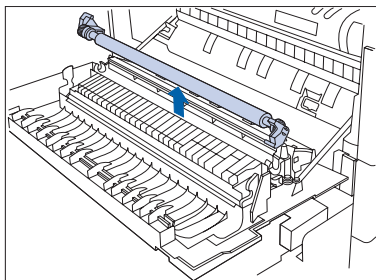
- 13** Remove the screws and set them aside. You do not need the screws any longer.



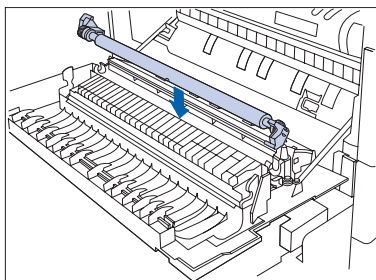
- 14** Tighten the two amber screws by turning them clockwise.



- 15** Unlock the BTR by lifting up its handles.



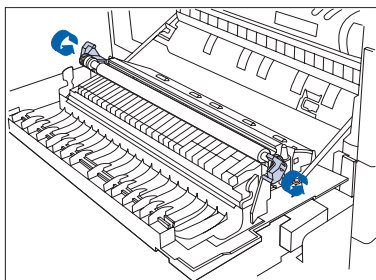
**16** Remove the BTR.



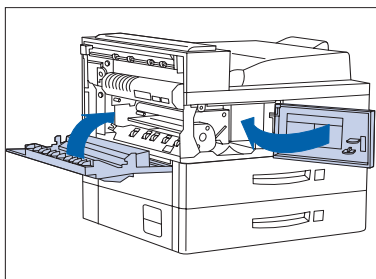
**17** Unpack and insert a new BTR, pressing down to hold the roller in place.



**Be very careful NOT to touch the rubber roller.**



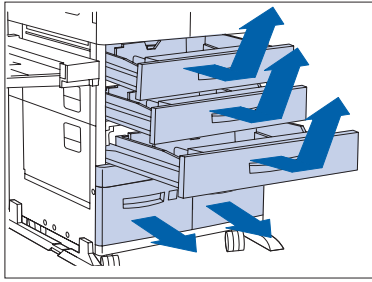
**18** Lock the BTR in place by pushing the handles.



**19** Close the front cover and Door A.



**When closing Door A, do not use the latch on the door. Instead, follow the instruction label on the door for the correct location at which to push the door closed.**



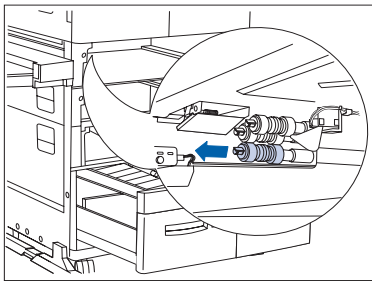
- 20** Remove paper input Trays 1, 2 and 3 and pull out Trays 4 and 5.



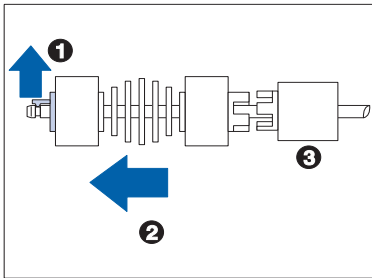
**Make sure trays 4 and 5 are all the way out.**



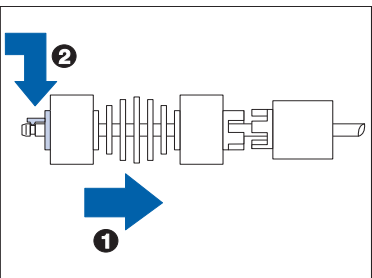
**Do not place the trays on carpet; place them on a hard surface.**



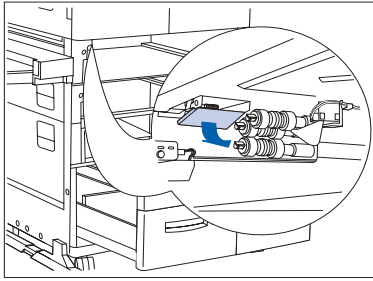
- 21** Locate the feedrolls for Tray 1 and replace the lower feedroll as shown in Steps 22 and 23.



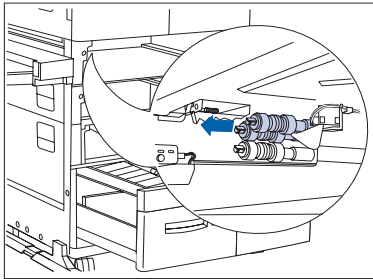
- 22** Remove the old feedroll by (1) pulling up on the amber tab and (2) sliding the feedroll off the spindle. Make sure (3) no additional parts come off with the feedroll.



- 23** Install the new feedroll by (1) pushing it onto the spindle until (2) the amber tab clicks into place.



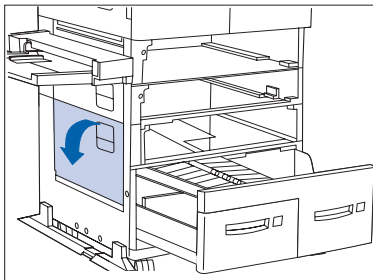
**24** Pull down the cover to expose the upper two feedrolls.



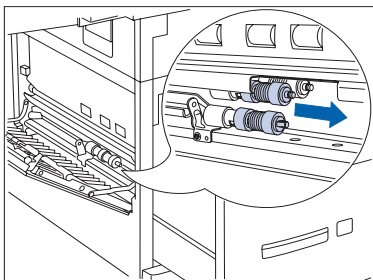
**25** Replace the upper two feedrolls.

For a tabletop configuration printer, complete the procedure by repeating Steps 21 through 25 for Tray 2, then skip to Step 32.

For a console configuration printer, repeat Steps 21 through 25 for Trays 2 and 3, then continue with Step 26.

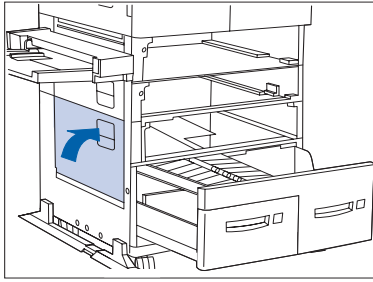


**26** Open Door C.

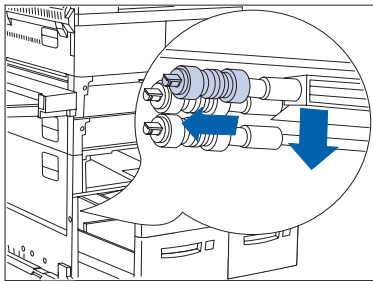


**27** Replace the two outer feedrolls for Tray 4.

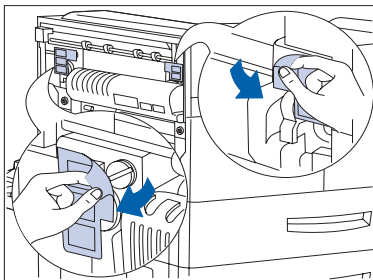




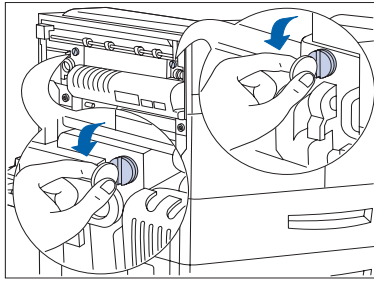
**28** Close Door C.



**29** Replace the third feedroll for Tray 4.



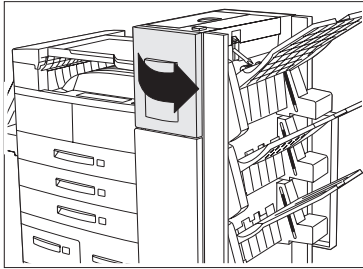
**30** Slide the cover open to expose the three feedrolls for Tray 5.




- 31** Replace the three feedrolls. (Refer to Step 21 on page 4-15 if necessary.)
- 32** Replace and close all paper input trays.
- 33** Reattach the power cord to the printer.
- 34** To reset the Maintenance Kit counter:
  - Power OFF the printer.
  - Hold down keys **^ 2** and **v 6** at the same time and power ON the printer.
  - Keep holding down keys **^ 2** and **v 6** until the message **\*IOT?\*** appears.
  - Then within five seconds after the message appears, hold down keys **← 0** and **v 5** at the same time until the next message **Reset Completed - Please Reboot** appears. This confirms the counter reset.
  - Reboot the Printer by powering OFF then Powering ON.

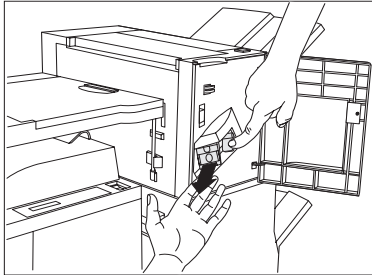
## Adding Staples to the Finisher

The printer will pause during a stapling job when the staple cartridge is empty. Follow these steps to place a new staple cartridge into the finisher.

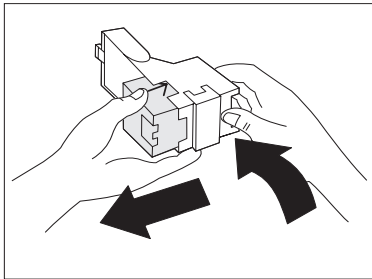


- 1 Open the access door on the side of the finisher.

 ***Staple replacement and jam clearance instructions are also displayed on the panel behind the access door.***

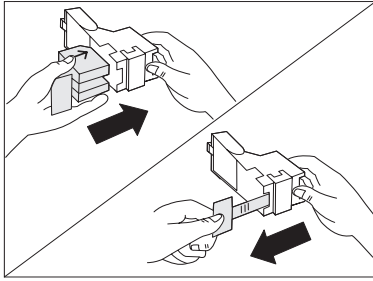


- 2 Place one hand under the cartridge. Use your other hand to release the cartridge from the finisher by pushing down on the latch as shown.



- 3 Remove the empty cardboard from the cartridge by pressing the clear plastic tab on the top rear of the cartridge as the hand on the right is doing in the figure.

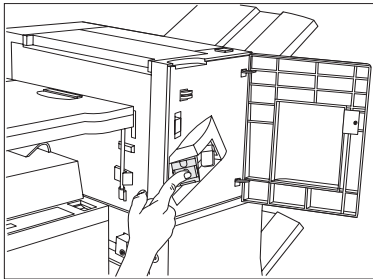
## Installing the Maintenance Kit



- 4 Slide a new set of staples into the cartridge and pull the tab to release the packaging.



*Make sure the arrows on the package of staples face up.*



- 5 Slide the full Staple Cartridge into the finisher until it snaps into place.



- 6 Close the access door. Stapling can now continue.

## Cleaning the Printer

---

Cleaning the exterior and interior of the printer as described in this section will help keep your printer in optimum working condition.



*Use only water or mild detergent on exterior surfaces. Do not use cleaning alcohol or other volatile substances that may discolor, crack or deform the printer casing.*

*Be sure to power OFF the printer and disconnect the power cord before cleaning the interior of the printer.*

---



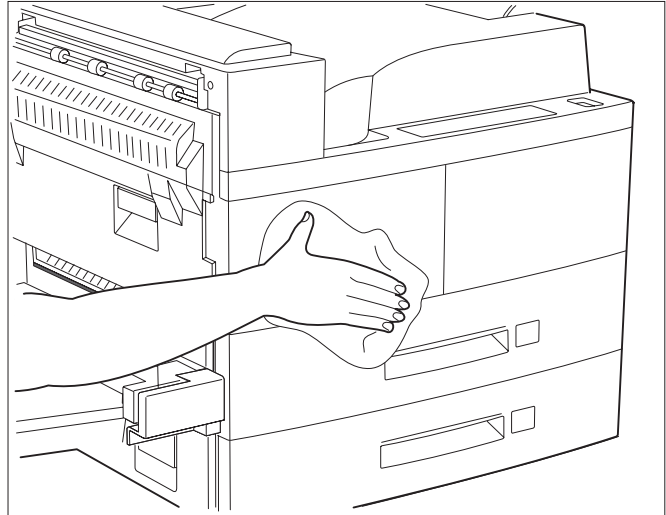
*The Fuser area becomes very hot in operation. It is best to wait at least 15 minutes for the printer to cool off before attempting to clean the interior of the printer.*

---

## Exterior Cleaning

Clean the exterior of the printer about once a month, using a soft, slightly damp cloth (see Figure 4.1 below). For stubborn stains, soak the cloth in a mild detergent solution before cleaning. Always finish by wiping the printer again with a soft, dry cloth.

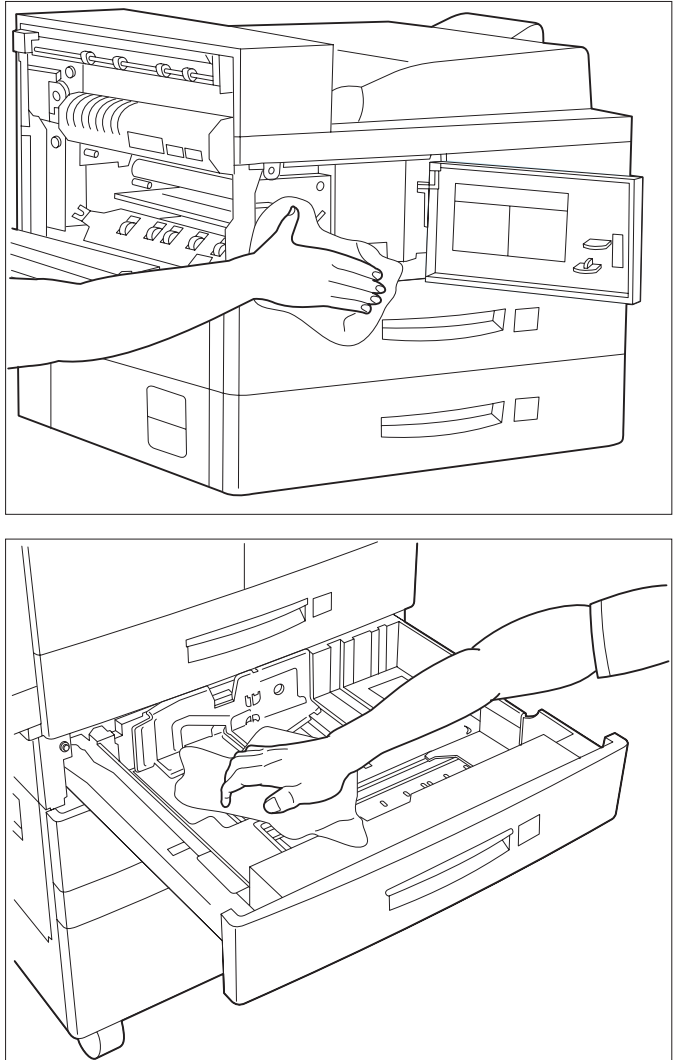
**Figure 4.1** Cleaning the exterior of the printer



## Interior Cleaning

After removing a paper jam or replacing the Laser Print Cartridge, remove any paper scraps and wipe off paper dust with a dry, clean cloth (as shown in Figure 4.2).

**Figure 4.2** Cleaning the interior of the printer









# 5

## Troubleshooting

<i>Printer Operation Problems</i> .....	5-2
<i>Control Panel Messages</i> .....	5-5
<i>Memory Board (DIMM) Locations</i> .....	5-29
<i>Paper Jams</i> .....	5-32
<i>What Causes a Paper Jam?</i> .....	5-32
<i>Clearing Paper Jams</i> .....	5-32
<i>Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)</i> .....	5-33
<i>Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)</i> .....	5-35
<i>Clearing Area B</i> .....	5-37
<i>Clearing Area C</i> .....	5-37
<i>Clearing Area D</i> .....	5-38
<i>Clearing Tray 5</i> .....	5-41
<i>Clearing the Duplex Module</i> .....	5-42
<i>Print Quality Problems</i> .....	5-43

# Printer Operation Problems

Consult Table 5.1 for corrective actions when the printer will not print or when the printed output is not what you expect.

**Table 5.1 Printer operation problems**

Problem	Action
<p>The printer will not print at all, or a file sent from the client/server will not print.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check with your network administrator to see that the printer is powered up, connected to the network and that the network is operational.</li><li>2. Check Control Panel messages for "Paper Jam," "Door Open," etc.</li><li>3. If the port (parallel or network) the printer is connected to is disabled, enable it. Check the Configuration Sheet for the port you are using to see if the Port Enable item in the appropriate Interface Menu is set to <b>On</b>. If it is set to <b>Off</b>, set it to <b>On</b> and try again.</li><li>4. If the printer has printed recently, do the following:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Attempt to print a Configuration Sheet. If it does not print, contact your Customer Support Center.</li><li>- If the Configuration Sheet prints, check to see that the printer is configured properly.</li><li>- If the printer is configured properly, check the Configuration Sheet to confirm that the correct PDL is enabled for the port or protocol you are using.</li><li>- If the correct PDL is enabled and the printer continues not to print, contact your Customer Support Center.</li></ul></li></ol>

Table 5.1 Page 1 of 3

Table 5.1 Printer operation problems

Problem	Action
A printed page does not look like it should.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make certain that the software application you are using to create your print job is configured properly. Refer to your software documentation.</li> <li>2. Make sure the correct driver is being used.</li> <li>3. Send a file containing PCL or PostScript commands to the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If your page prints as it should, your printer and interface are functioning properly.</li> <li>- If your information prints correctly, but doesn't look right, you may have: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- An error in your command sequence/operator.</li> <li>- A missing downloaded font.</li> <li>- A mismatched printer option against your host formatting.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Command errors may be identified by looking at your input file. You can determine which fonts are in the system by printing a PCL or PS Font List. You can verify your data setup by printing a Configuration Sheet and checking your printer setup.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
The requested font for the job does not print.	<p>Print a PCL Font List, or PostScript Font List if the job is PostScript.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If fonts print on the Font List, your print job may need correcting.</li> <li>• If fonts do not print on the Font List, reload the fonts and print another PCL or PostScript Font List.</li> </ul>
PostScript commands are printed instead of the PostScript job.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make certain that the software application you are using to create your job is configured properly. Refer to your software documentation.</li> <li>2. The job sent to the printer might have included an incorrect header, and therefore, not have indicated that a PostScript job was being sent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check your software to make sure the PostScript header file is being sent to the printer.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Set the Print PS Errors item in the System Menu to <b>On</b> and re-send the job. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If an error page prints, there is a problem in the PostScript coding. Correct the coding problem and re-send the job. Asking for features not available can cause a configuration error.</li> <li>- If the job still does not print and an error page was not printed, the job may require additional memory.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

Table 5.1 Page 2 of 3

**Table 5.1 Printer operation problems**

Problem	Action
<p>A PostScript or PCL job fails to print.</p>	<p>For a PostScript job, do the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check that you are using a PostScript printer driver.</li> <li>• For a PostScript job, set the Print PS Errors item in the System Menu to <i>On</i> and re-send the job.</li> <li>• If an error page prints, there is a problem in the PostScript coding. Correct the coding problem and re-send the job. Asking for features not available can cause a configuration error.</li> <li>• If the job still does not print and an error page was not printed, the job may require additional memory.</li> </ul> <p>For a PCL job, do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the output for PCL errors.</li> <li>• If there is a problem in the PCL coding, correct the coding problem and re-send the job.</li> <li>• If there is no error message, re-send the job.</li> <li>• If the error message says “out of memory”, the job may require additional memory. Contact your dealer for ordering more printer memory.</li> </ul>
<p>Table 5.1 Page 3 of 3</p>	

# Control Panel Messages

Listed in Table 5.2 are Control Panel messages that either:

- Cause the printer to stop printing, or
- Require the user to call for service.

Also included in Table 5.2 are common, non-error messages you are likely to see. The messages are listed in alphabetical order.

**Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions**

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-ESS</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-BASE RAM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-BASE ROM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-ASIC</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-TIMER</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 1 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-PWPM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-DMA</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-COMM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0001<sup>†</sup>-USB</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0002<sup>†</sup>-ESS FAN</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0003<sup>†</sup>-ESS</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0004<sup>†</sup>-BASE RAM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0005<sup>†</sup>-BASE ROM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 2 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>0006<sup>†</sup>-COMM</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0007<sup>†</sup>-ASIC</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0008<sup>†</sup>-DMA</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0009<sup>†</sup>-ROM BOARD</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0010<sup>†</sup>-DISK</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0040<sup>†</sup></b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>0101<sup>†</sup>-DIMM1</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in DIMM1. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Power OFF the printer.</li> <li>2. Remove and reinstall DIMM 1.</li> <li>3. Power ON the printer.</li> <li>4. If the error code is redistilled, replace DIMM 1.</li> </ol> Refer to Figure 5.1 on page 5-29 for location of memory board.

Table 5.2 Page 3 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>0102<sup>†</sup>-DIMM2</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in DIMM 2. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Power OFF the printer.</li> <li>2. Remove and reinstall DIMM 2.</li> <li>3. Power ON the printer.</li> <li>4. If the error code is re-displayed, replace DIMM 2.</li> </ol> Refer to Figure 5.1 on page 5-29 for location of memory board.
<b>0103<sup>†</sup>-DIMM3</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in DIMM3. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Power OFF the printer.</li> <li>2. Remove and reinstall DIMM 3.</li> <li>3. Power ON the printer.</li> <li>4. If the error code is redisplayed, replace DIMM 3.</li> </ol> Refer to Figure 5.1 on page 5-29 for location of memory board.
<b>1000<sup>†</sup>-IOT</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>2000<sup>†</sup>-XIE RAM</b>	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>2010<sup>†</sup>-XIE PWPM</b>	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>2020<sup>†</sup>-XIE VDMA</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>3000<sup>†</sup>-Token Ring</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in the Token Ring interface. Power OFF the printer and reset the interface card. Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 4 of 24



Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>3000<sup>†</sup>-Serial</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in the Serial interface. Power OFF the printer and reseal the interface card. Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>3000<sup>†</sup>-Enet</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred in the Ethernet interface. Power OFF the printer and reseal the interface card. Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>4000<sup>†</sup>-NIC</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF the printer and reseal the interface card. Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>5000<sup>†</sup>-MEMORY</b> † Appears in the upper left corner of the display.	A fault condition has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this code appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>All Jobs Delete</b>	This message appears for secure printing. You can delete all secure jobs in your queue. Press <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] to toggle between <b>Delete</b> and <b>Print</b> . Select <b>Delete</b> to delete all jobs and press <b>Enter</b> [↵].
<b>All Jobs Print</b>	This message appears for secure printing. You can print all secure jobs in your queue. Press <b>Value Up</b> [+ 3] or <b>Value Down</b> [- 7] to toggle between <b>Print</b> and <b>Delete</b> all jobs. Select <b>Print</b> to print all jobs and press <b>Enter</b> [↵].
<b>Canceling Job... Job name</b>	A job is being cancelled.

Table 5.2 Page 5 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Check Staple Cartridge	The Stapler cartridge is not in position. Verify that the Stapler cartridge has been installed, and that it contains staples.
Check Toner Cartridge	The Laser Print Cartridge is not seated correctly. Reseat the Laser Print Cartridge. See <i>"Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge"</i> (page 4-2) for installation instructions.
Clear Area A Clear Env/Bypass	A paper jam has occurred in Area A. Clear the Envelope Feeder or the Bypass Feeder. Then reset Tray 1.
Clear Area A Reset Tray 1	A paper jam has occurred in Area A. Use one of the following procedures to clear Area A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>"Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)"</i> (page 5-33), or</li> <li>• <i>"Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)"</i> (page 5-35).</li> </ul> Then reset Tray 1.
Clear Area B Reset Tray 2	A paper jam has occurred in Area B. Clear Area B (page 5-37). Then reset Tray 2.
Clear Area C Reset Tray 4	A paper jam has occurred in Area C. Clear Area C (page 5-37). Then reset Tray 4.
Clear Area C Reset Tray 5	A paper jam has occurred in Area C. Clear Area C (page 5-37). Then reset Tray 5.

Table 5.2 Page 6 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Clear Area A,B Reset Tray 2	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A and B. Use one of the following procedures to clear Area A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)” (page 5-33), or</li> <li>• “Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)” (page 5-35).</li> </ul> Then clear Area B (page 5-37) and reset Tray 2.
Clear Area A,B Reset Tray 3	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A and B. Use one of the following procedures to clear Area A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)” (page 5-33), or</li> <li>• “Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)” (page 5-35).</li> </ul> Then clear Area B (page 5-37) and reset Tray 3.
Clear Area A,B,C Reset Tray 4	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A, B, and C. Use one of the following procedures to clear Area A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)” (page 5-33), or</li> <li>• “Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)” (page 5-35)</li> </ul> Then clear Area B (page 5-37), clear Area C (page 5-37) and reset Tray 4.
Clear Area A,B,C Reset Tray 5	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A, B, and C. Use one of the following procedures to clear Area A: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)” (page 5-33), or</li> <li>• “Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)” (page 5-35).</li> </ul> Then clear Area B (page 5-37), clear Area C (page 5-37) and reset Tray 5.

Table 5.2 Page 7 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Clear Area H	The Finisher compiler tray (Area H) safety switch is on. Remove the obstacle from Area H.
Close Cover H	Finisher cover H is not closed entirely, or the Compiler cover safety switch is open or the cover switch is open. Remove the obstacle from this area and close the door.
Close Door A	Door A is open. Close Door A.
Close Door B	Door B is open. Close Door B.
Close Door C	Door C is open. Close Door C.
Close Door D	Door D is open. Close Door D.
Close Door E	Door E is open. Close Door E, the Gate Cover of the Finisher.
Close Door F	Door F is open. Close Door F, the Transport Cover of the Finisher.
Close Door G	Door G is open. Close Door G, the Top Cover of the Finisher.
Close Duplx Unit	The Duplex Module is open. Close the Duplex Module.
Close Staple Door	The Finisher's staple door is open. Close the stapler door.
CRUM Failure Power Off/On	A Laser Print Cartridge memory failure has occurred. Power OFF and ON the printer. If the problem returns, printing cannot resume. Power OFF the printer and contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 8 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)







Message	Description/Corrective Action
Delete Jobs	This Reset Menu selection allows you to delete secure or proof jobs from the hard disk. Press <b>Item Up</b>  or <b>Item Down</b>  to toggle between <b>Yes</b> and <b>No</b> . Select <b>Yes</b> to delete the jobs and press <b>Enter</b>  .
Deleting... Job name	The secure or proof job(s) you asked to delete is(are) being deleted.
Demo Mode	This Reset Menu selection allows you to enter the printer demonstration mode. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to toggle between <b>Yes</b> and <b>No</b> . Select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>Enter</b>  to enter the demonstration mode.
Disk Error Format Disk	A general failure (such as read/write) of the hard disk has occurred. Power OFF and Power ON the printer. If this message appears again at Power ON, contact your Customer Support Center.
Disk Full	A secure or proof job spooled to the disk exceeds the available free space on the hard disk. The job will be cancelled and deleted after part of the first copy is printed. The job is cancelled and deleted after printing the first copy of the partial job. Delete fonts, macros, or secure and proof jobs to make space.
Downloading Please Wait	The printer is being loaded with new operating code. Please wait.
Download Failed Please Reboot	A problem occurred during downloading printer operating code. Printing may continue, but use of the disk is locked out. Try loading again.
Download Passed Please Reboot	The downloading process has passed and the printer must be rebooted for changes to take effect.
Duplex Unit Fail Power Off/On	The Duplex Module has failed. Printing from the Duplex Module cannot continue. Power OFF the Printer. Remove and re-install the Duplex Module. See page 6-14. Then Power ON the printer. If it still fails, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 9 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>Enter Password _xxx</b>	This message appears when using the Password Menu. From this menu, the Job Menu can be accessed in order to release jobs for printing. Enter a valid 4 digit password using the Control Panel keys.
<b>Env. Feeder Empty</b>	The Envelope Feeder is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the Envelope feeder if it is to be used again.
<b>Env. Feeder Fail Power Off/On</b>	The Envelope Feeder has failed. Printing from the 100 Envelope Feeder cannot continue. Power OFF the Printer. Remove and re-install the 100 Envelope Feeder following the instruction beginning on page 6-33. Power ON the printer. If it still fails, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Fan Failure Power OFF NOW!</b>	The fan is not working. Power OFF the printer immediately and contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Finisher Failure Power Off/On</b>	Problem with Finisher elevator, stackers, or compiler tray. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Fin Fail H5-81 Power Off/On</b>	Problem with Finisher eject clamp. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Fin Fail H5-82 Power Off/On</b>	Finisher tamper home sensor problem. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Fin Fail H5-83 Power Off/On</b>	Finisher stacker offset home sensor problem. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Fin Fail H5-84 Power Off/On</b>	Finisher tray sensor problem. Power OFF and ON the printer.

Table 5.2 Page 10 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>Fin Fail H5-85</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	Finisher stacker upper limit switch problem. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Fin Fail H5-86</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	Finisher stacker lower limit switch problem. Power OFF and ON the printer.
<b>Flash Error</b> <b>Format Flash</b>	Displayed when Flash Memory error is found. Format flash memory as per the instructions for "Flash Format" (page 1-105). If the problem persists, contact your Customer Service Center.
<b>Flushing...</b> <b>Job name</b>	The PostScript print job could not be printed and is being parsed out and discarded. This message remains on the display until the job being flushed is complete, which may require additional data to be sent from the host.
<b>Format Failed</b> <b>Disk Locked</b>	A problem occurred during disk formatting. Printing may continue, but use of the disk is locked out. Try reformatting the disk again or replace it.
<b>Fuser Fan</b> <b>Failure</b>	The printer's fuser fan has failed. Power OFF and ON the printer. If this message reappears, Power OFF the printer and contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Fuser Temp.</b> <b>Problem</b>	The Fuser has failed; printing cannot resume. Power OFF and Power ON the printer to see if the problem occurs again. If you have just replaced the Fuser Cartridge, reseal it. If you have not replaced the maintenance kit, it may be time to do so. See "Installing the Maintenance Kit" (page 4-9). If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Init Failed</b> <b>Disk Locked</b>	This disk cannot be initialized because it has been locked via a PjL command.

Table 5.2 Page 11 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Initializing...	This message appears for a few seconds while the printer is initializing.
Initializing... Flash Memory	The printer is initializing the flash memory.
Insert Tray 1	The printer cannot feed from Tray 1. Make sure Tray 1 is properly inserted in the printer.
Insert Tray 2	The printer cannot feed from Tray 2. Make sure Tray 2 is properly inserted in the printer.
Insert Tray 3	The printer cannot feed from Tray 3. Make sure Tray 3 is properly inserted in the printer.
Insert Tray 4	The printer cannot feed from Tray 4. Make sure Tray 4 is properly inserted in the printer.
Insert Tray 5	The printer cannot feed from Tray 5. Make sure Tray 5 is properly inserted in the printer.
Install Print Cartridge	The Laser Print Cartridge is missing or is not installed correctly. Re-install the existing Cartridge or install a new one. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
Install Staple Cartridge	The Finisher is out of staples. Remove the empty Staple Cartridge and install a new one. Refer to the section "Adding Staples to the Finisher" in Chapter 4 of the <i>User Guide</i> .
IOT Memory Fail Power Off/On	The Print Engine (IOT) memory has failed and printing cannot resume. Power OFF and ON the printer. If this message reappears, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 12 of 24



Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)







Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>IOT NVM Fail</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	Nonvolatile Memory (NVM) has failed on the print engine (also called the IOT—Image Output Terminal). Printing cannot resume. Power OFF and ON the printer. If this message reappears, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Job n</b>	This message appears after selecting a secure job to be printed or deleted. If the job was given a name, that name appears in place of “Job n”. Print or delete the job (see the following two messages).
<b>Job n</b> <b>Delete</b>	This message appears from the Password Menu. It causes a specific job to be deleted. If the job was given a name, that name appears in place of “Job n”. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to toggle between <b>Delete</b> and <b>Print</b> . Select <b>Delete</b> to delete the job and press <b>Enter</b>  .
<b>Job n</b> <b>Print</b>	This message appears from the Password Menu. It causes a specific job to be printed. If the job was given a name, that name appears in place of “Job n”. Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to toggle between <b>Print</b> and <b>Delete</b> . Select <b>Print</b> to print the job and press <b>Enter</b>  .
<b>Laser Failure</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	The laser assembly has failed and printing cannot continue. Power OFF and ON the printer. If this message reappears, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.2 Page 13 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)




Message	Description/Corrective Action
<p><b>Load &lt;tray&gt;</b> <b>&lt;size&gt; &lt;type&gt;</b></p>	<p>This message appears on two lines. the top line contains the input tray name (e.g., Tray 1-5, Any Tray, MBF, or Envelope Feeder). The bottom line contains the paper size (e.g., Letter, A3, A4) and paper type (e.g., Plain, Preprinted, Letterhead).</p> <p>A tray may be out of the requested paper, or the printer is not configured for the requested paper. The printer default settings determine whether to wait or ignore the mismatch condition.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the tray is out of the requested paper, load the requested paper (size and type) in the appropriate tray and printing continues.</li> <li>• If the request is for paper not loaded in the printer (e.g., the job requests 11 x 17" paper and a tray is not configured for 11 x 17"), you are prompted to load the requested paper in the first tray designated by the Tray Sequence parameter.</li> <li>• If you do not want to load the requested paper in the first tray in the Tray Sequence, you can do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One of the other trays can be loaded with the requested size paper and reconfigured via the Tray Menu to match the requested paper type.</li> <li>- Press <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to scroll through all the trays, displaying the size and type paper in each tray. If an alternate paper is acceptable, press <b>Enter</b>  to cause printing to continue on the new paper. However, data can be lost (off the page) or not formatted correctly when you allow a different paper size/type to be used. Trays are searched in the order specified in the Tray Sequence item on the Tray Menu.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Table 5.2 Page 14 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>Mailbox Failure</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	The 10-bin Mailbox/Collator has failed. Printing to the 10-bin Mailbox/Collator cannot continue. You can, however, send output to the standard output bin. Power OFF and ON the printer. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Maintenance Kit</b> <b>Replace</b>	The Fuser, Bias Transfer Roll (BTR) and feedrolls have reached their end of life. Install a new Maintenance Kit. See <i>"Installing the Maintenance Kit"</i> (page 4-9) for instructions.
<b>Maintenance Kit</b> <b>Required</b>	The Fuser, Bias Transfer Roll (BTR) and feedrolls are near their end of life. Install a new Maintenance Kit. See <i>"Installing the Maintenance Kit"</i> (page 4-9) for instructions.
<b>Manual Feed</b> <b>&lt;Size&gt; &lt;Type&gt;</b>	The paper required for the job needs to be loaded in the Manual Tray. The bottom line contains the paper size (e.g., Letter, A3, A4) and paper type (e.g., Plain, Preprinted, Letterhead). Add the requested paper size and paper type to the manual tray.
<b>MCU Failure</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	The printer control program has been destroyed. Power OFF and ON the printer. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Memory Failure</b> <b>Power Off/On</b>	The printer controller memory has failed; printing cannot resume. Perform a Memory Check by powering OFF the printer, then powering it ON again. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Menu Locked</b>	A submenu has been locked and the user is prohibited from making any changes to the configuration parameters in the sub-menu. The menu can only be unlocked with a PjL command or SNMP tool such as CentreWare DP.

Table 5.2 Page 15 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)




Message	Description/Corrective Action
<b>Motor Failure Power Off/On</b>	The printer motor has failed; printing cannot resume. Power OFF and ON the printer. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>NV Memory Failure Power Off/On</b>	Nonvolatile memory on the printer controller has failed and printing cannot resume. Power OFF and ON the printer. If the problem persists, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>OEM ID Mismatch</b>	The Laser Print Cartridge is not manufactured specifically for this printer. Install the Laser Print Cartridge for this printer. To order a Laser Print Cartridge, contact your Customer Support Center.
<b>Offline</b>	The printer is offline, not in menu mode, and without any fault conditions. Offline does not mean the printer is disconnected from a host. It means page formatting and printing are halted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To put the printer online, press <b>Online</b> .</li> <li>• To select menus, press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b> .</li> </ul>
<b>Out of Memory</b>	This message appears when the current PCL or PostScript job cannot print because it exceeds available memory. Split the job into smaller jobs, or install additional memory.
<b>Out of Toner</b>	This message appears when the Laser Print Cartridge is out of toner. Replace the cartridge. See <i>"Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge"</i> (page 4-2).
<b>Paper Jam Clear Area A</b>	A paper jam has occurred in Area A. Open Door A and remove jammed paper. Refer to the section <i>"Clearing Paper Jams"</i> (page 5-32) and the procedure <i>"Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)"</i> (page 5-33), or <i>"Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)"</i> (page 5-35).

Table 5.2 Page 16 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Paper Jam Clear Areas A,B	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A and B. Open Doors A and B and remove jammed paper. Refer to "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and the procedures "Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)" (page 5-33) or "Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)" (page 5-35), and "Clearing Area B" (page 5-37).
Paper Jam Clear Area A,B,C	A paper jam has occurred in Areas A, B, and C. Open Doors A, B, and C and remove jammed paper. Refer to "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and the procedures "Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)" (page 5-33) or "Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)" (page 5-35), "Clearing Area B" (page 5-37), and "Clearing Area C" (page 5-37).
Paper Jam Clear Area B	A paper jam has occurred in Area B. Open Door B and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing Area B" (page 5-37).
Paper Jam Clear Area B,C	A paper jam has occurred in Areas B and C. Open Doors B and C and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing Area B" (page 5-37) and "Clearing Area C" (page 5-37).
Paper Jam Clear Area C	A paper jam has occurred in Area C. Open Door C and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing Area C" (page 5-37).
Paper Jam Clear Area D	A paper jam has occurred in Area D (Mailbox/Collator). Open Door D and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing Area D" (page 5-38).

Table 5.2 Page 17 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Paper Jam Clear Area E	A paper jam has occurred in Area E. Open Door E and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Area E" (page 5-39).
Paper Jam Clear Area F	A paper jam has occurred in Area F. Open Door F and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Area F" (page 5-39).
Paper Jam Clear Area G	A paper jam has occurred in Area G. Open Door G and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Area G" (page 5-40).
Paper Jam Clear Area H	A paper jam has occurred in Area H. Open Door H and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Area H" (page 5-40).
Paper Jam Clear Area G,H	A paper jam has occurred in Areas G and H. Open Doors G and H and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Area G" (page 5-40) and "Clearing Area H" (page 5-40).
Paper Jam Clear Duplx Unit	A paper jam has occurred in the Duplex Module. Open the Duplex Module and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing the Duplex Module" (page 5-42).
Paper Jam Clear Env Feeder	The printer cannot feed from the Envelope Feeder. Open the Envelope Feeder and remove any jammed envelopes.
Paper Jam Clear Tray 5	A paper jam has occurred in Tray 5 of the 2,500 Sheet Feeder. Open Tray 5 and remove jammed paper. See "Clearing Paper Jams" (page 5-32) and "Clearing Tray 5" (page 5-41).
Please Wait	An operation that takes time is proceeding. Please wait until the operation finishes and the display changes.

Table 5.2 Page 18 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)






Message	Description/Corrective Action
Power Saver On	The printer has set itself to lower power mode (Power Saver is on). As soon as it receives the next print job, the printer leaves power saver mode.
Press Menu	This message appears when there are no secure jobs in the job queue. Press <b>Menu Up</b>  or <b>Menu Down</b>  to return to the Main Menu.
Print Using <size> <type>	This messages appears when the available paper size or type does not match what was requested and Value Up or Value Down was pressed. Use <b>Value Up</b>  or <b>Value Down</b>  to find an acceptable available size and type, then press <b>Enter</b>  . If the paper size and type that was substituted is not acceptable, load the requested paper size and type and print the job again.
Processing... <job name>	This message appears when a job is being processed. The job's name appears on the second line.
Processing... Config Sheet	A Configuration Sheet is being printed.
Processing... DEMO	A Demo Page is being printed.
Processing... Disk Directory	The Hard Drive directory is being created.
Processing... Envelope Feeder	The Envelope Feeder is being used.
Processing... Fault History	The printer is generating and printing a fault history log.

Table 5.2 Page 19 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Processing... MBF	The MBF is being used.
Processing... Menu Map	A list of the Control Panel menu structure is being printed.
Processing... PCL Font List	A PCL Font List is being printed.
Processing... PostScript	A PostScript font list is being printed.
Processing... TEST	A Test Page is being printed.
Processing... Tray <i>n</i>	The Tray <i>n</i> is being used.
Ready	This message indicates that the printer is online and waiting for data to print.
Remove Output Face-down Bin	The Face-down Bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Face-down Bin.
Remove Output Finisher Bin 1	Finisher Bin 1 is full. Remove the output from Bin 1.
Remove Output Finisher Bin 2	Finisher Bin 2 is full. Remove the output from Bin 2

Table 5.2 Page 20 of 24



Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Remove Output Finisher Bin 3	Finisher Bin 3 is full. Remove the output from Bin 3
Remove Output From Finisher	All three Finisher bins are full. Remove the output from all three bins.
Remove Output From Mailbox 1	The Mailbox 1 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 1 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 2	The Mailbox 2 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 2 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 3	The Mailbox 3 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 3 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 4	The Mailbox 4 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 4 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 5	The Mailbox 5 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 5 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 6	The Mailbox 6 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 6 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 7	The Mailbox 7 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 7 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 8	The Mailbox 8 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 8 output bin.
Table 5.2 Page 21 of 24	

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Remove Output From Mailbox 9	The Mailbox 9 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 9 output bin.
Remove Output From Mailbox 10	The Mailbox 10 output bin is full. Printing cannot continue. Remove the output from the Mailbox 10 output bin.
Replace Print Cartridge	The Laser Print Cartridge has reached its end of life. Printing cannot resume. Replace the cartridge. See <i>"Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge"</i> (page 4-2).
Reset ENV/Bypass	A jam may have occurred in the Envelope Feeder or Bypass Feeder. Reset the Envelope Feeder or Bypass Feeder.
Reset Trays 2,3	A jam may have occurred in the Trays 2 and/or 3. ACTION: Reset the trays.
ROS Trouble Power Off/On	This message indicates there is a problem with the ROS controlling ASIC. Power OFF the printer and power it ON again. If the message appears again, contact your Customer Support Center.
Slide In Finisher	The Finisher guide rail is not entirely in position. Slide the guide rail into position. Make sure it is securely snapped into the console. Check to see that the thumb screw that connects it to the Finisher is hand tightened.
SNMP Resetting	SNMP MIB data base is being re-initialized. Please wait.
Staple Fail	Staple Failure. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Staple Fail H5-91 Power Off/On	The Staple Head did not return to its initial position. Power OFF and ON the printer.

Table 5.2 Page 22 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

Message	Description/Corrective Action
Stap1 Fail H5-92 Power Off/On	The Staple Head did not switch ON within the specified time. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Stap1 Fail H5-93 Power Off/On	The Stapler Failed in the Front Corner position. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Stap1 Fail H5-94 Power Off/On	The Stapler Failed in the Front Straight position. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Stap1 Fail H5-95 Power Off/On	The Stapler Failed in the Rear Straight position. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Stap1 Fail H5-96 Power Off/On	The Stapler Ready Sensor did not go back ON after the staples were refilled, or stapling was unsuccessful. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Stap1 Fail H5-97 Power Off/On	The End Wall Sensor of the Finisher did not go on ON or OFF within the specified time. Power OFF and ON the printer.
Toner Low	Toner is getting low in the Laser Print Cartridge, but printing will continue without interruption until the cartridge is empty. Replace the cartridge as soon as possible.
Tray 1 Empty	This tray is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the tray if it is to be used again.
Tray 2 Empty	This tray is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the tray if it is to be used again.
Tray 3 Empty	This tray is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the tray if it is to be used again.

Table 5.2 Page 23 of 24

Table 5.2 Control Panel messages and corrective actions (continued)

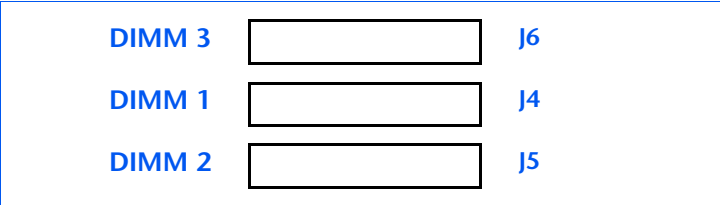
Message	Description/Corrective Action
Tray 4 Empty	This tray is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the tray if it is to be used again.
Tray 5 Empty	This tray is no longer being used to print because it is empty. Refill the tray if it is to be used again.
Tray n Lifting	The indicated tray has been refilled, is rising into position and will be soon ready for printing.
V x.x xx/xx/xx	This message appears when the printer is in Power ON diagnostics. The first line contains the printer software version number. The second line contains the creation date of this printer software version. None, if there is no failure during Power ON diagnostics. After other diagnostic messages, the final message will be that the printers is online and waiting for data.
Waiting...	The printer was busy processing data from a host but the print job was not completed. This message appears until: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Another print job is received.</li> <li>• The Port Timeout expires.</li> <li>• The last page timeout expires.</li> <li>• The PostScript "waittimeout" expires.</li> </ul>
Warming Up...	The Fuser has not warmed up yet. This message disappears when the printer is ready. The message displays at Power ON and may display after the cover has been opened for some time or when the printer is exiting Power Saver mode.

Table 5.2 Page 24 of 24

# Memory Board (DIMM) Locations

Figure 5.1 illustrates the location of memory boards (DIMMs) on the printer's Controller Board.

Figure 5.1 Memory Board (DIMM) locations



## Diagnostic LED Flash Sequences

When the printer is powered ON, a sequence of self test diagnostics are run. Some failures that are detected in these tests are identified by a flashing sequence indicated on the system controller diagnostic LED located on the Controller Board at the rear of the printer (see Figure 1.1 on page 1-6).

Table 5.3 identifies the faults associated with the flash sequences.

**Table 5.3 Diagnostic LED flash sequences**

Flash Sequence	Description/Corrective Action
1 flash — 1 second — 1 flash...etc.	System controller CPU fault. Contact your Customer Support Center.
2 flashes — 1 second — 2 flashes...etc.	Base RAM fault. Contact your Customer Support Center.
3 flashes — 1 second — 3 flashes...etc.	ROM fault. Contact your Customer Support Center.
4 flashes — 1 second — 4 flashes...etc.	System controller to print engine fault. Make sure the controller board is firmly seated. If the problem is not resolved, contact your Customer Support Center.

Table 5.3 Page 1 of 2

Table 5.3 Diagnostic LED flash sequences (continued)

Flash Sequence	Description/Corrective Action
5 flashes — 1 second — 5 flashes...etc.	Resolution enhancement self-test fault. Contact your Customer Support Center.
6 flashes — 1 second — 6 flashes...etc.	Communications ports internal loopback test fault. Contact your Customer Support Center.
7-11 flashes — 1 second — 7-11 flashes...etc.	Slot DIMM1 - DIMM5 fault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 7 flashes indicate DIMM1 fault.</li> <li>• 8 flashes indicate DIMM2 fault.</li> <li>• 9 flashes indicate DIMM3 fault.</li> <li>• 10 flashes indicate DIMM4 fault.</li> <li>• 11 flashes indicate DIMM5 fault.</li> </ul> Perform the corrective actions listed under <a href="#">0101</a> to <a href="#">0105</a> in Table 5.2 on page 5-5 to replace DIMM1 through DIMM5.
Table 5.3 Page 2 of 2	

## Paper Jams

---

Your printer has been designed to provide reliable, trouble-free operation. However, you may experience an occasional paper jam.

When the printer detects a misfeed or a paper jam, the printing process is halted and a Control Panel message is displayed.

After the paper jam has been cleared, the printer will resume operation to complete the print job. The pages in the print engine will be reprinted when the jam is cleared and printing resumes.

### What Causes a Paper Jam?

Paper jams occur most often when:

- The paper stock does not meet specification. See *Chapter 2: Paper Handling*.
- The paper stock is in poor condition.
- The printer needs cleaning.
- Printer parts are worn and need to be replaced.

### Clearing Paper Jams

Table 5.2 “Control Panel messages and corrective actions” (page 5-5) lists the types of paper jams that may occur. If you see a message that indicates a paper jam, find the message in the left-hand column and perform the accompanying steps to clear the paper jam.



***Be careful not to touch any of the components inside the printer when removing jammed paper. They may be very hot.***

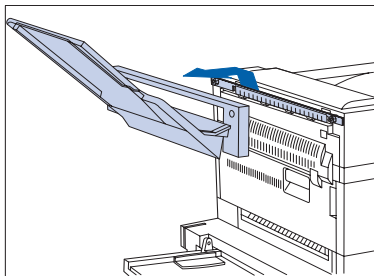
---



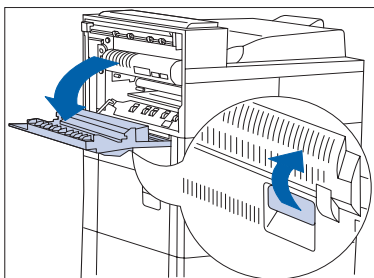
## Clearing Area A (Without Duplex Module)

Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Area A when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Area A** and the printer does not have the Duplex Module installed.

- 1 Remove the Face-up Bin by lifting it up and out.

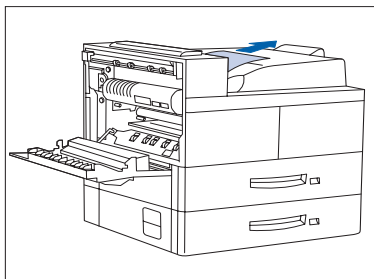


- 2 Open Door A.

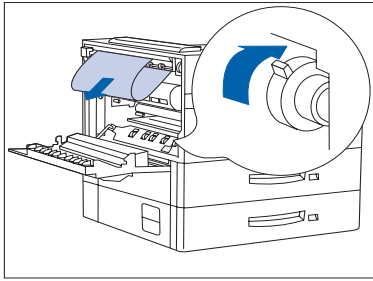


- 3 Remove any jammed paper.

- A If the leading edge of the paper is already in the Face-down Bin, gently pull out the paper until it is completely removed.

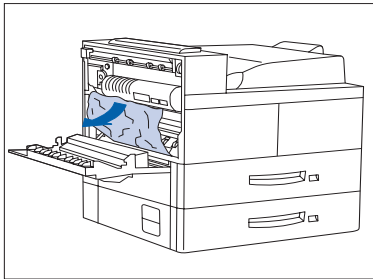


## Paper Jams

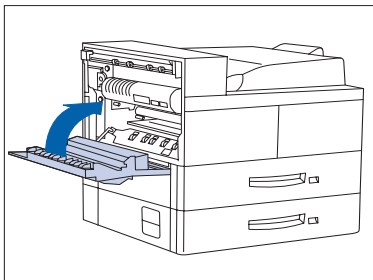


- B** If the paper is jammed in the Fuser area, remove it carefully without touching the Fuser. If it becomes difficult to pull out the paper, locate the green knob— at the same time, press it in and turn it until the paper is adequately out and easy to pull.


 **Never touch the Fuser area (where a label indicating high temperature is located).**



- C** If the paper jammed in Area A is below the Fuser, remove it by gently pulling it away from the printer.

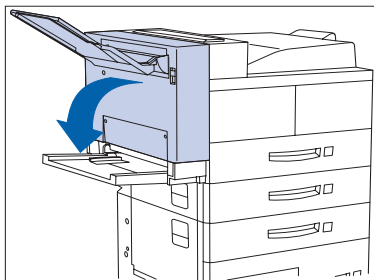


- 4** Close Door A, then reattach the Face-up Bin.

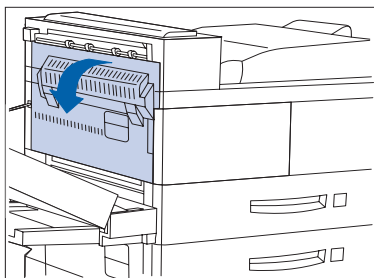
 **If the Control Panel message indicates an Area B jam, see “Clearing Area B” (page 5-37).**

## Clearing Area A (With Duplex Module)

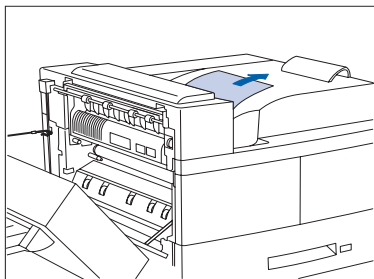
Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Area A when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Area A** and there is a Duplex Module installed on the printer.



- 1 Remove any paper from the Face-up Tray, then open the Duplex Module.

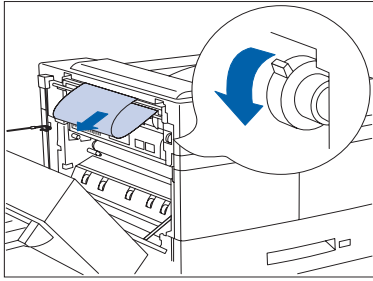


- 2 Open Door A.



- 3 Remove any jammed paper.
  - A If the leading edge of the paper is already in the Face-down Bin, gently pull out the paper until it is completely removed.

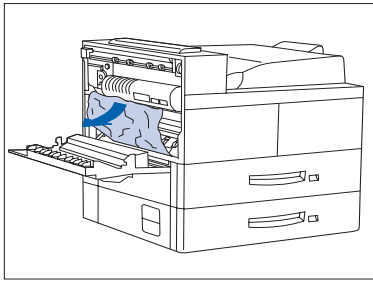
## Paper Jams



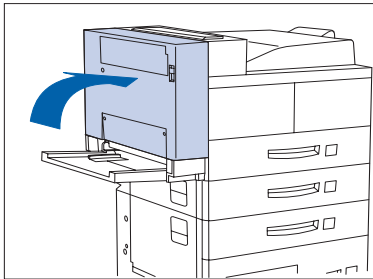
- B** If the paper is jammed in the Fuser area, remove it carefully without touching the Fuser. If it becomes difficult to pull out the paper, locate the green knob— at the same time, press it in and turn it until the paper is adequately out and easy to pull.



**Never touch the heater area (where a label indicating high temperature is located).**



- C** If the paper jammed in Area A is below the Fuser, remove it by gently pulling it away from the printer.

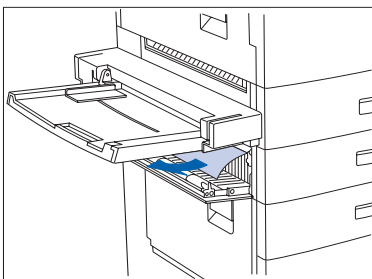


- 4** Close Door A, then close the Duplex Module.





*If the Control Panel message indicates an Area B jam, see “Clearing Area B” (page 5-37).*

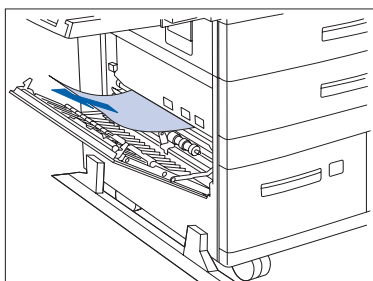
## Clearing Area B



Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Area B of the printer when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Area B**.

- 1 Open Door B and remove any jammed paper.
  -  *For easier access to Door B, you can fold up the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder (shown at left) or pull out the Envelope Feeder (if installed).*
- 2 Close Door B by pressing it in the middle.
  -  *If the Control Panel message indicates an Area C jam, continue to the section "Clearing Area C" below.*

## Clearing Area C



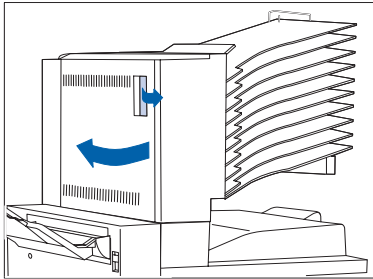
Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Area C of the 2,500 Sheet Feeder when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Area C**.

- 1 Open Door C and remove any jammed paper.
- 2 Close Door C by pressing it in the middle.

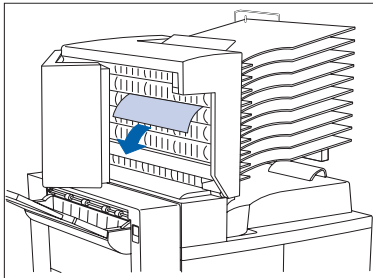
## Clearing Area D

Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Area D (Mailbox/Collator) when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Area D**.

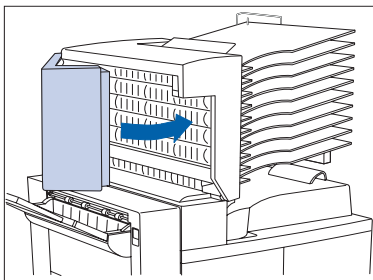
**1** Open Door D.



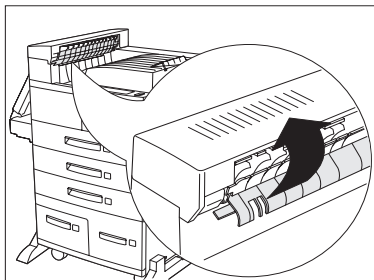
**2** Remove any jammed paper.



**3** Close Door D.



## Clearing Area E



Follow the procedure below when the Control Panel display reads: **Paper Jam Clear Area E.**

- 1 Lift the plastic roll cover under the paper transport, using the tab as indicated. Remove any paper under the roll cover. Release the roll cover when you have removed the paper.

## Clearing Area F



Follow the procedure below when the Control Panel display reads: **Paper Jam Clear Area F.**

- 1 Raise the cover of the Bypass Transport and remove any jammed paper.
- 2 Lower the cover of the transport when you are finished.

## Clearing Area G



Follow the procedure below when the Control Panel display reads: **Paper Jam Clear Area G.**

- 1 Raise the cover of the Door G and remove any jammed paper.
- 2 Close Door G when you are finished.

## Clearing Area H



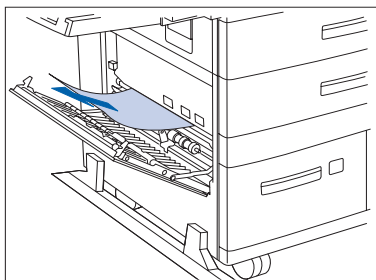
Follow the procedure below when the Control Panel display reads: **Paper Jam Clear Area H.**

- 1 Raise the assembly at Area H and remove any jammed paper.
- 2 Close Door H when you are finished.

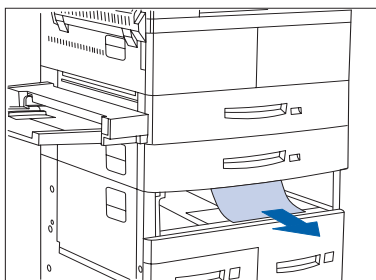


## Clearing Tray 5

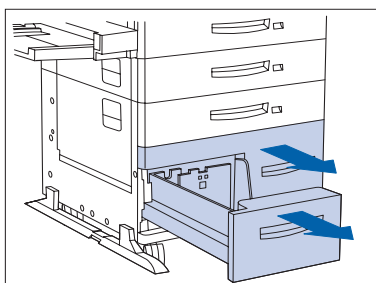
Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from Tray 5 of the 2,500 Sheet Feeder when the Control Panel display reads **Reset Tray 5**.



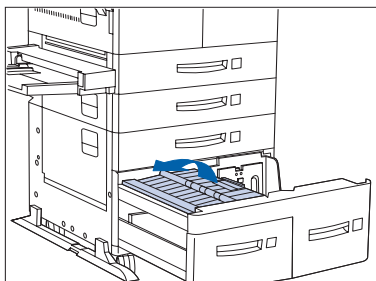
- 1 Open Door C and remove any jammed paper. Then close Door C.



- 2 Open and remove Tray 3 by lifting the tray from the front. Carefully pull out any jammed paper. Reset the paper, then replace and close Tray 3.



- 3 Open Trays 4 and 5. Carefully remove any jammed paper. Reset the paper in the trays.

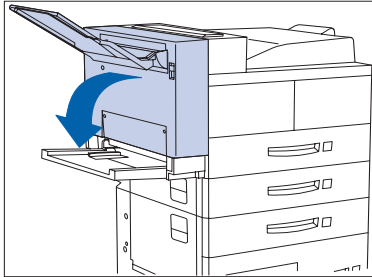


- 4 Lift the Tray 5 transport and carefully remove any jammed paper, then close Trays 4 and 5.

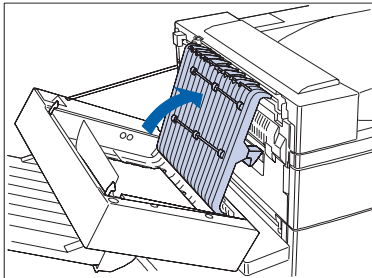
## Clearing the Duplex Module

Follow the procedure below to clear a paper jam from the Duplex Module when the Control Panel display reads **Clear Duplx Unit**.

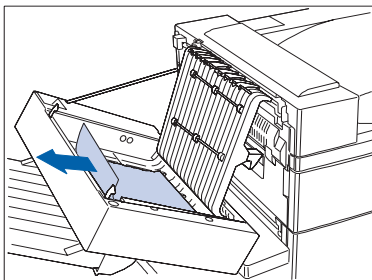
- 1 Open the Duplex Module.



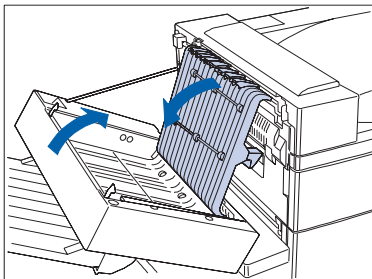
- 2 Open the inside cover of the Duplex Module.



- 3 Remove any jammed paper in the direction of the arrow.



- 4 Close the inside cover of the Duplex Module, then close the Duplex Module.



# Print Quality Problems

Table 5.4 lists common print quality problems, the possible cause, and recommended actions.

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems


Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<b>Light/faint prints</b> Overall image is lighter than normal. 	Toner Saver mode.	Turn off Toner Saver.
	Toner level low/empty.	Remove the Laser Print Cartridge carefully and vigorously shake it several times, then re-install it. (This may help redistribute the remaining toner before having to replace the cartridge.) Refer to <i>"Replacing the Laser Print Cartridge"</i> (page 4-2).
	Damp paper stock.	Replace paper stock.

Table 5.4 Page 1 of 8

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems (continued)


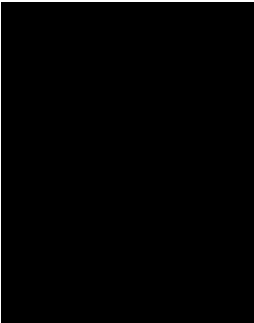
Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Blank Prints</b></p> <p>Entire printed page is blank with no visible print.</p> 	<p>If just installed, the Laser Print Cartridge insert (tape) may still be in place.</p>	<p>Remove the tape insert.</p>
	<p>Multiple sheets are being fed from the paper tray at the same time.</p>	<p>Remove the paper from the paper tray and fan it. Ensure that paper is correctly loaded in the tray with edges under metal corners.</p>
	<p>No printable data received from computer.</p>	<p>Print a Test Print. If the Test Print is normal, check the following:</p> <p>Interface cable between computer and printer</p> <p>Printer set up and application software</p> <p>If the Test Print is blank, contact your Customer Support Center.</p>
	<p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge or low on toner.</p>	<p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>
<p><b>Black prints</b></p> <p>The page is entirely black.</p> 	<p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge, or the cartridge is at its end of life.</p>	<p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>
	<p>Printer power supply has failed.</p>	<p>Contact your Customer Support Center.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 2 of 8

Table 5.4 Print quality problems (continued)

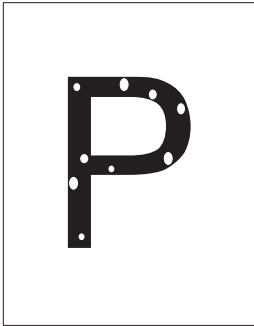
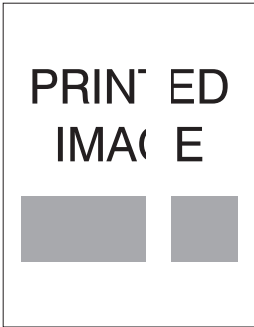
Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Spot deletions</b></p> <p>Areas of the print are extremely light or missing.</p> 	<p>Damp paper stock.</p> <p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge, or the cartridge is at its end of life.</p>	<p>Replace the paper stock.</p> <p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>
<p><b>Vertical line deletions</b></p> <p>Localized print deletions forming narrow lines running in the direction of paper movement.</p> 	<p>Laser Print Cartridge not installed correctly.</p> <p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge, or the cartridge is at its end of life.</p>	<p>Remove then re-install the Laser Print Cartridge.</p> <p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 3 of 8

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems (continued)

Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Horizontal line deletions</b></p> <p>Localized print deletions appearing as bands running across the page perpendicular to the direction of paper movement.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>PRINTED IMAGE</p> <p>PRINTED IMAGE</p> </div>	<p>Defective paper stock, creases, folds, etc.</p>	<p>Replace the paper stock.</p>
<p><b>Dark streaks</b></p> <p>Black lines running across the print parallel to the direction of paper movement.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>PRINTED IMAGE</p> </div>	<p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge, or the cartridge is at its end of life.</p> <p>Defective Fuser.</p>	<p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p> <p>Replace the Fuser.</p> <p>Contact your dealer for ordering information.</p> <p>Refer to <i>“Installing the Maintenance Kit”</i> (page 4-9) for removal and installation instructions.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 4 of 8

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems *(continued)*

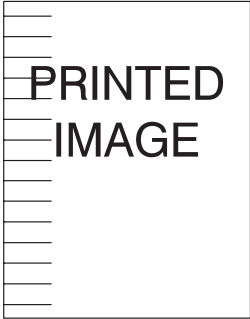

Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Repetitive horizontal dark streaks</b></p> <p>Black lines running across the page perpendicular to the direction of paper movement.</p> 	<p>Contaminated paper path.</p> <p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge, or the cartridge is at its end of life.</p>	<p>Print several blank sheets of paper to remove any toner accumulations.</p> <p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>
<p><b>Dark spots/marks</b></p> 	<p>Defective Laser Print Cartridge.</p>	<p>Replace the Laser Print Cartridge.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 5 of 8

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems (continued)

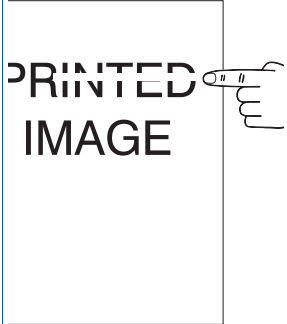
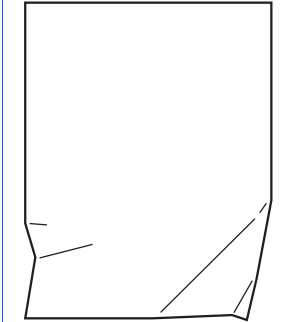
Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Unfused or partially fused image</b></p> <p>The printed image is not fully fused to the paper and easily rubs off.</p> 	<p>Damp paper stock.</p> <p>Heavy or unusual paper stock.</p> <p>Defective Fuser.</p>	<p>Replace paper stock.</p> <p>Use only approved paper/media. Refer to the <i>User Guide</i>.</p> <p>Replace the Fuser. Contact your dealer for information. See “<i>Installing the Maintenance Kit</i>” (page 4-9) for removal and installation instructions.</p>
<p><b>Wrinkled prints</b></p> <p>Prints are wrinkled, creased, or torn.</p> 	<p>Poor paper condition.</p> <p>Paper is damp.</p> <p>Fuser is at its end of life</p>	<p>Inspect/replace the paper stock.</p> <p>Replace paper stock.</p> <p>Replace the Fuser. Contact your dealer for information. See “<i>Installing the Maintenance Kit</i>” (page 4-9) for removal and installation instructions.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 6 of 8



Table 5.4 Print quality problems (continued)



Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Blurred prints</b></p> <p>Image is blurred at the edges.</p> 	<p>Poor paper condition.</p> <p>Paper is damp.</p>	<p>Inspect/replace the paper stock.</p> <p>Replace the paper stock.</p>
<p><b>Random deletions</b></p> <p>Random light areas and deletions.</p> 	<p>Poor paper condition.</p> <p>Paper is damp.</p>	<p>Inspect/replace the paper stock.</p> <p>Replace the paper stock.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 7 of 8

**Table 5.4** Print quality problems (continued)

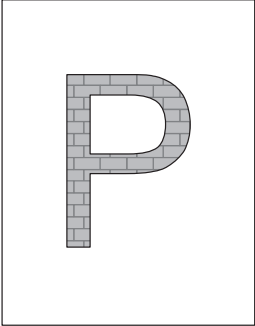
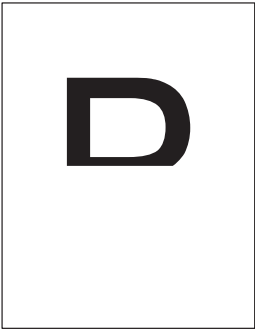
Problem	Possible Cause(s)	Corrective Action(s)
<p><b>Grainy Graphics</b></p> <p>A graphic image is coarse or grainy (like a brick or checkerboard pattern) rather than a smooth halftone.</p> 	<p>The printer tried to print a complex graphic image with inadequate memory.</p>	<p>Refer to the <i>User Guide</i> for memory requirements.</p>
<p><b>Broken Page/Page Too Complex</b></p> <p>The printed image is missing all of the image print after a straight line.</p> 	<p>The printer tried to print a complex graphic image with inadequate memory.</p>	<p>Refer to the <i>User Guide</i> for memory requirements.</p>

Table 5.4 Page 8 of 8



# 6

## *Installing and Removing Printer Options*

<i>Precautions</i> .....	6-3
<i>2,500 Sheet Feeder</i> .....	6-4
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-4
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-7
<i>Duplex Module</i> .....	6-9
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-9
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-14
<i>10-bin Mailbox/Collator</i> .....	6-18
<i>Installing (Console Configuration)</i> .....	6-18
<i>Removing (Console Configuration)</i> .....	6-22
<i>Installing (Tabletop Configuration)</i> .....	6-25
<i>Removing (Tabletop Configuration)</i> .....	6-29
<i>100 Envelope Feeder</i> .....	6-33
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-33
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-34
<i>Hard Disk Drive</i> .....	6-35
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-36
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-38

<i>Memory Modules</i> .....	6-40
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-41
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-43
<i>Interface Cards</i> .....	6-45
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-45
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-49
<i>Finisher</i> .....	6-51
<i>Installing</i> .....	6-51
<i>Removing</i> .....	6-59

## Precautions

---

Printer options are easy to install, however before you attempt to install (or remove) any printer options, please read and observe the following precautions.



- **TWO PEOPLE ARE REQUIRED WHEN LIFTING OR CARRYING THE PRINTER:** *The weight of the main unit without paper cassette, consumables, and paper is about 99 lbs. (45 kg). Never attempt to lift the printer by yourself. The printer should always be carried by two people.*
  - **POWER OFF THE PRINTER:** *The printer determines which options are installed through a self-test. The self-test is run when you power ON the printer. Therefore, for proper operation, you must power OFF the printer before installing/removing an option, then power it back ON after installing/removing an option.*
  - **DISCONNECT THE GFI POWER CORD:** *Never remove the printer controller board while the printer is plugged in. To avoid the possibility of electrical shock, always disconnect the power cord when installing or removing ANY internal or external printer option.*
  - **DISCHARGE STATIC ELECTRICITY:** *The controller board and internal printer options (DIMMs, Hard Disk Drive) are sensitive to static electricity. Before installing or removing an internal option, discharge static electricity from your body by touching something metal, such as the metal back plate on any device plugged into a grounded power source. If you walk around before finishing the installation, again discharge any static electricity.*
-

# 2,500 Sheet Feeder

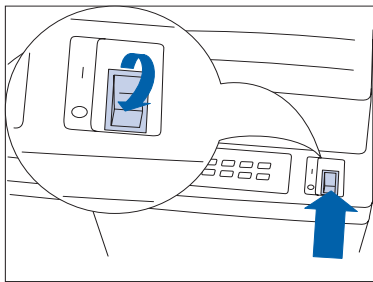
This section contains two sets of instructions:

- “Installing” (below)
- “Removing” (page 6-7)

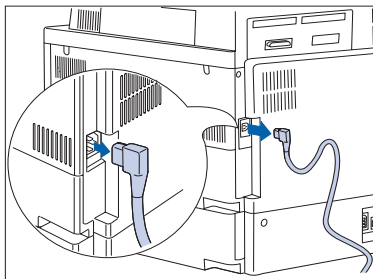
## Installing



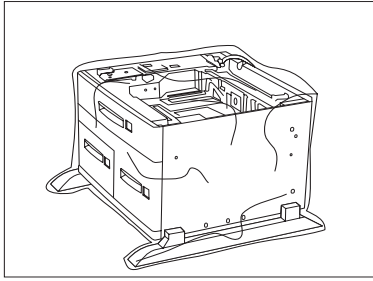
*If a 10-bin Mailbox/Collator is installed, remove it before installing the 2,500 Sheet Feeder. See page 6-29 for removal instructions.*



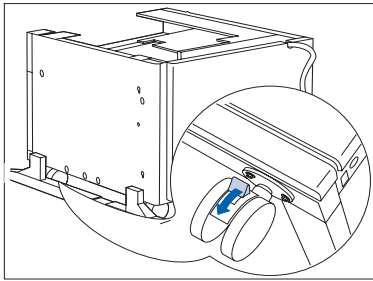
**1** Power OFF the printer.



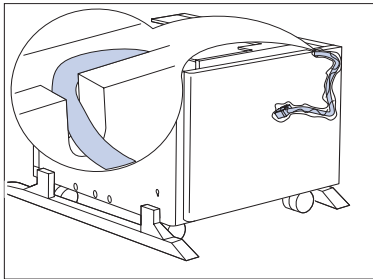
**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.



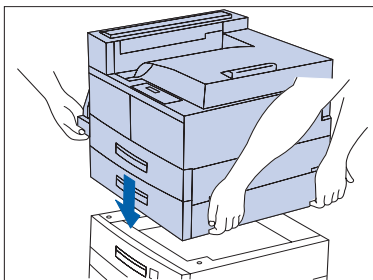
**3** Unpack the 2,500 Sheet Feeder. Set aside the pair of mounting brackets and screws to be used in Step 8 on page C-6.



**4** Lock the two front wheels.

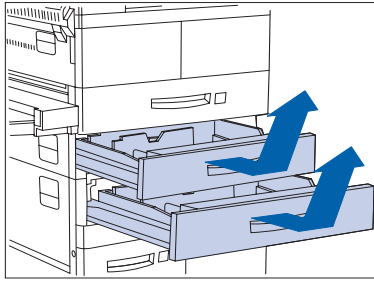


**5** Remove all packing tape and the plastic from around the connecting cord, and make sure that the connecting cord is in the side notch.

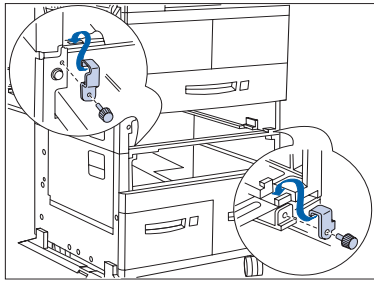


**6** With two people, gently lower the printer onto the 2,500 Sheet Feeder, aligning it to seat securely in the notches.

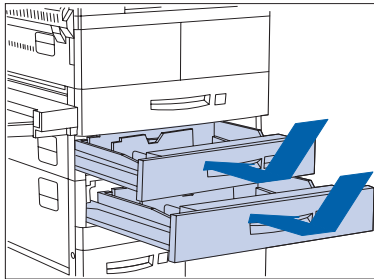
## 2,500 Sheet Feeder



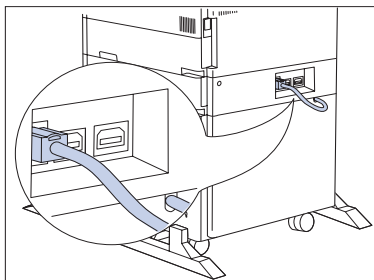
- 7 Remove Tray 2 from the printer by pulling it out all the way, then lifting it up and out of the printer. Repeat for Tray 3 in the 2,500 Sheet Feeder.



- 8 Attach the left and right mounting brackets, securing them with the supplied screws.



- 9 Re-insert the paper trays.



- 10 Attach the 2,500 Sheet Feeder's connector cord to the printer.

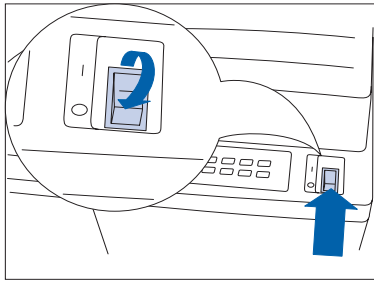
- 11 Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.

- 12 Power ON the printer.

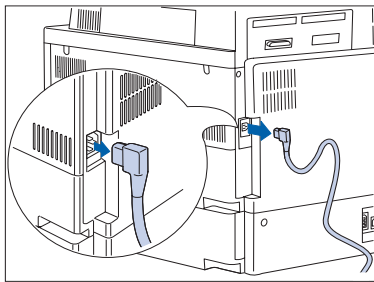
- 13 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that Trays 3, 4 and 5 appear in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under "Installed Options."



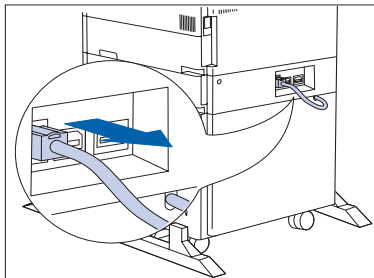
## Removing



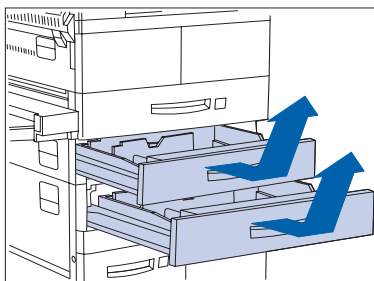
**1** Power OFF the printer.



**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

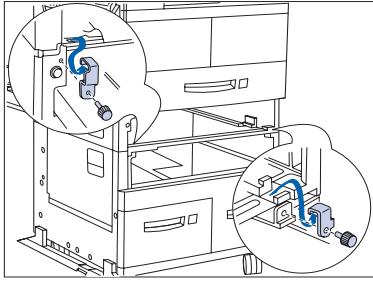


**3** Disconnect the connector cord from the printer.

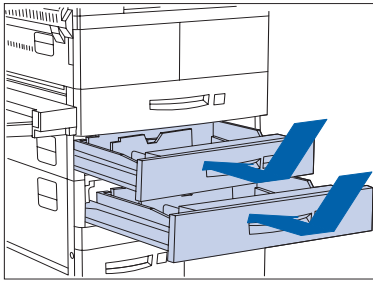


**4** Remove Tray 2 from the printer by pulling it out all the way, then lifting it up and out of the printer. Repeat for Tray 3 in the HCF.

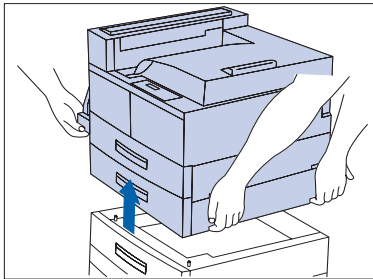
## 2,500 Sheet Feeder



- 5 Loosen the screws and remove the left and right mounting brackets.



- 6 Reinsert the paper trays.



- 7 With two people, lift away the printer from the HCF.
- 8 Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.
- 9 Power ON the printer.
- 10 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that Trays 3, 4 and 5 no longer appear in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under "Installed Options."

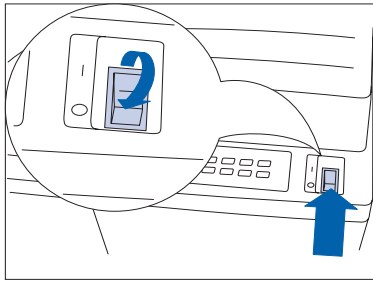
# Duplex Module

This section contains two sets of instructions:

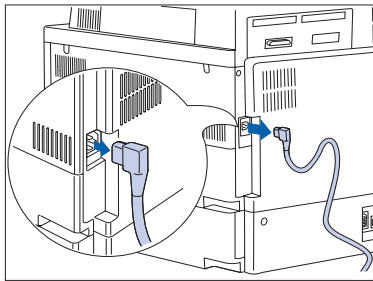
- “Installing” (page 6-9)
- “Removing” (page 6-14)

## Installing

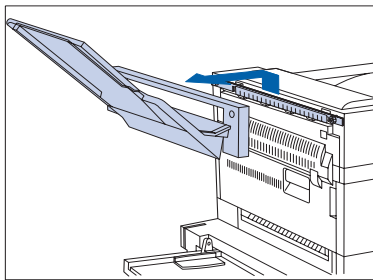
Follow the procedure below to install the Duplex Module onto a printer that is already in service. If installing onto a printer that has not been set up with the Face-up Bin and powered ON, start with Step 7 on page C-13.



- 1 Power OFF the printer.

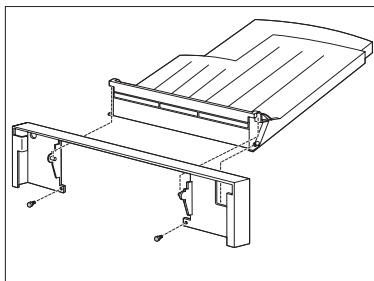


- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

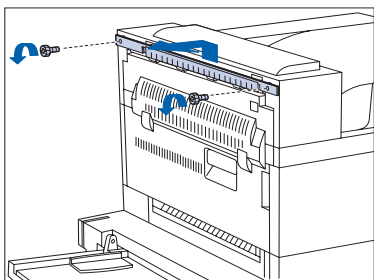


- 3 Remove the Face-up Bin and its connecting plate from the printer.

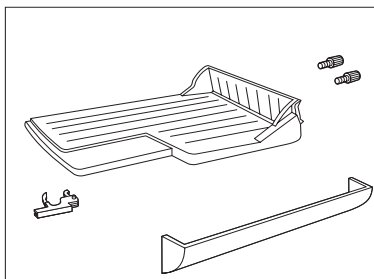
## Duplex Module



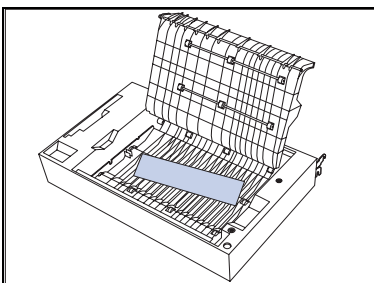
- 4 Detach the Face-up Bin from the connecting plate.



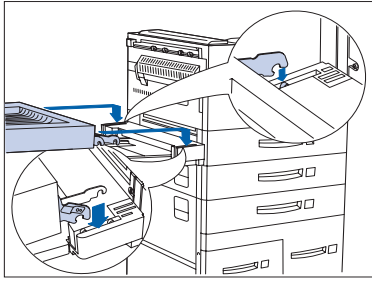
- 5 Remove the mounting bracket from the printer.



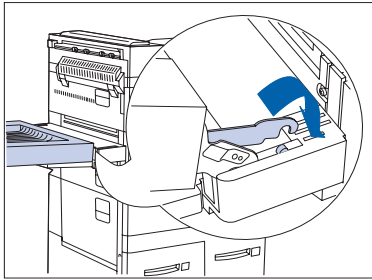
- 6 Gather the Face-up Bin holder, support bracket and screws from the original printer packaging.



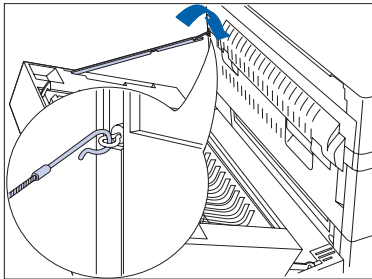
- 7 Unpack the Duplex Module and remove any packing material.



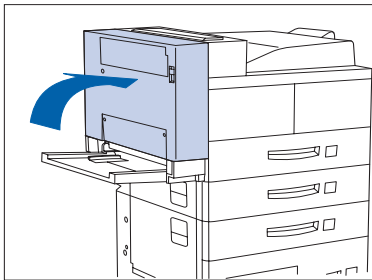
- 8** With both hands, position the Duplex Module at the printer, placing the smaller hooks over the mounting pins on both sides.



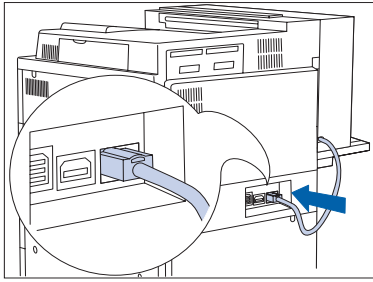
- 9** After engaging the closest hook and pin, rock the Duplex Module forward to engage the other hook.



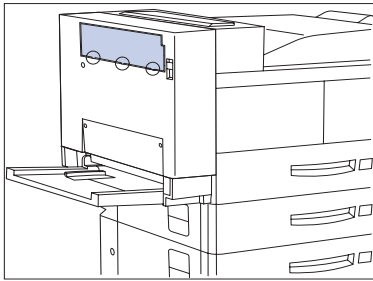
- 10** Attach the safety wire by its hook.



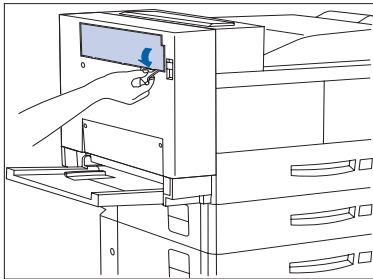
- 11** Close the Duplex Module, snapping it into place.



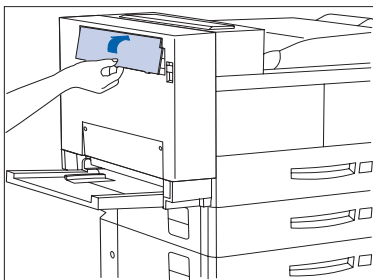
**12** Attach the connecting cord to the printer.



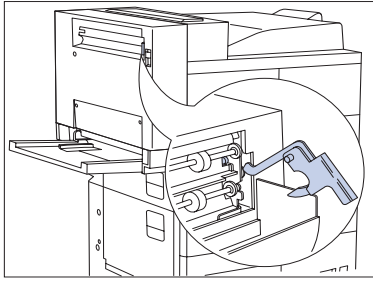
**13** Insert the Face-up Bin support bracket into one of the three connecting tabs on the lower end of the filler panel.



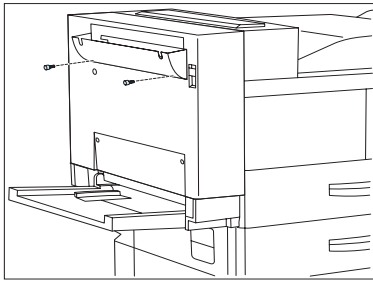
**14** Use the support bracket to break the connecting tab by pushing it down, then repeat for the other two connecting tabs.



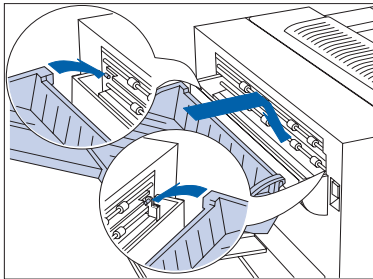
**15** Lift the filler panel up to break it off.



**16** Insert the support bracket into the Duplex Module.



**17** Attach the Face-up Bin holder to the Duplex Module and tighten the thumbscrews.



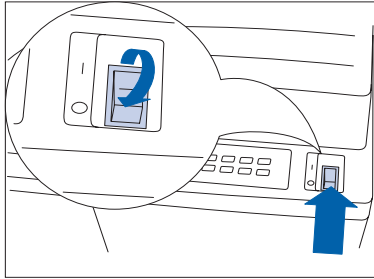
**18** Hook the Face-up Bin onto the Duplex Module, securing the projecting part of the Duplex Module into the opening in the left side of the bin. Make sure the Face-up Bin is firmly seated.

**19** Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.

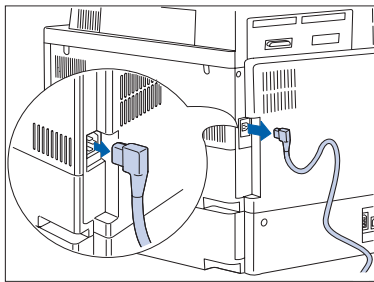
**20** Power ON the printer.

**21** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Duplex item appears in the System Menu section of the Configuration Sheet.

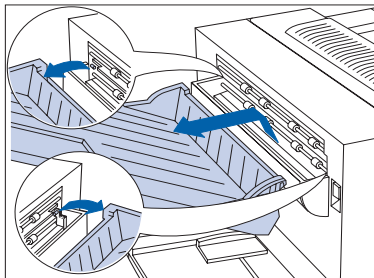
## Removing



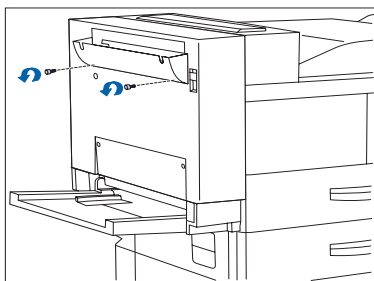
**1** Power OFF the printer.



**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

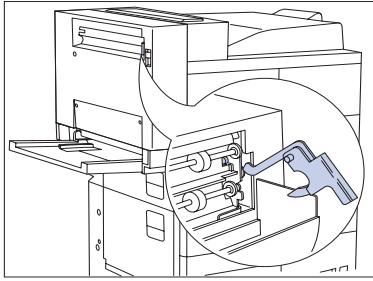


**3** Lift the Face-up Bin to unlock it and pull it away from the Duplex Module.

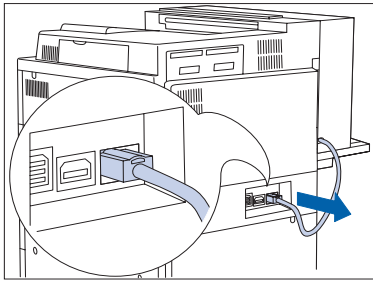


**4** Loosen and remove the screws, then remove the Face-up Bin holder.

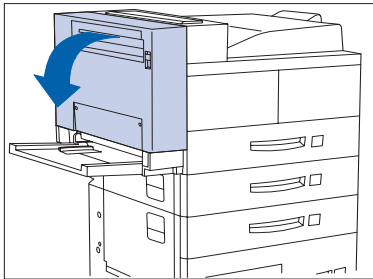




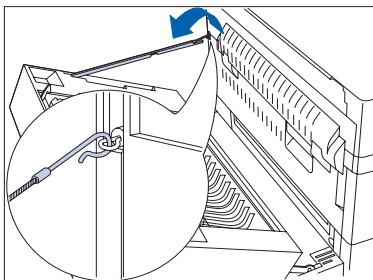
- 5** Remove the support bracket and store it with the Face-up Bin holder and screws in a safe place should you ever need to reinstall the bin in the Duplex Module.



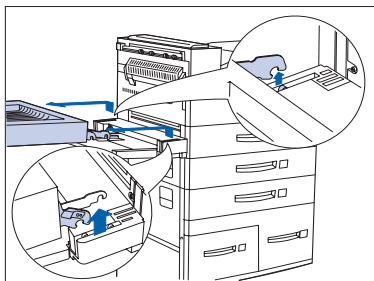
- 6** Disconnect the Duplex Module connector cord from the printer.



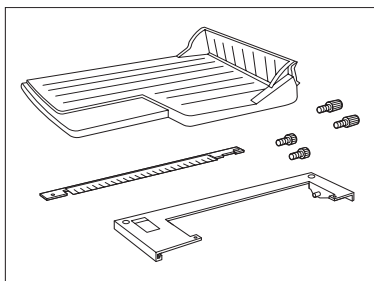
- 7** Open the Duplex Module.



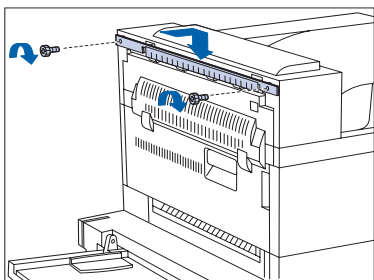
- 8** Unhook the safety wire.



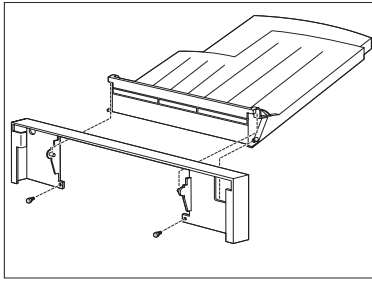
- 9** Using both hands, tilt back and lift up the Duplex Module and pull it away from the printer.



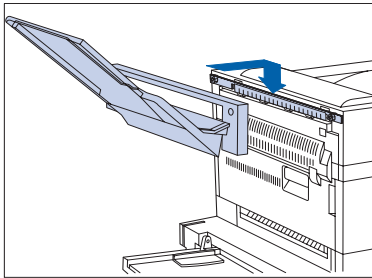
- 10** Gather the Face-up Bin bracket, connecting plate and screws (two pairs) from the original printer packaging.



- 11** Attach the bracket to the printer with the supplied screws. Tighten by hand.



- 12 Attach the bin to the connecting plate with the supplied screws.



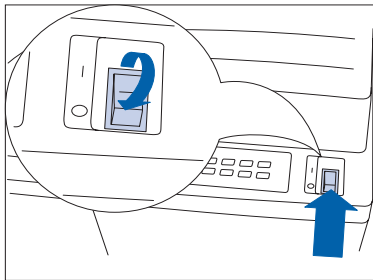
- 13 Hang the bin and connecting plate on the bracket. Make sure they are firmly seated.
- 14 Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.
- 15 Power ON the printer.
- 16 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Duplex item no longer appears in the System Menu section of the Configuration Sheet.

# 10-bin Mailbox/Collator

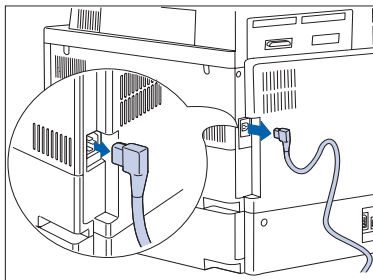
This section contains four sets of instructions:

- “Installing (Console Configuration)” (page 6-18)
- “Removing (Console Configuration)” (page 6-22)
- “Installing (Tabletop Configuration)” (page 6-25)
- “Removing (Tabletop Configuration)” (page 6-29)

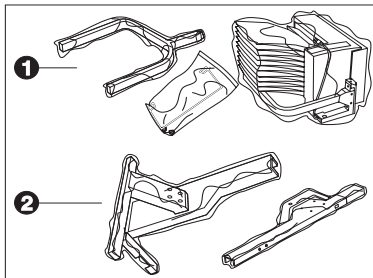
## Installing (Console Configuration)



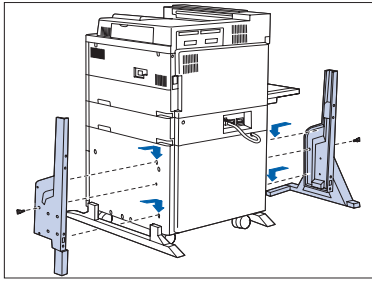
**1** Power OFF the printer.



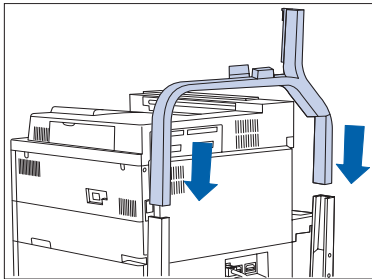
**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.



**3** Unpack the Mailbox from its two boxes (1 and 2), remove any tape, and gather its parts for installation.

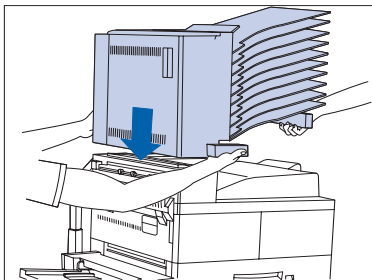


- 4** Attach the two lower stands to the printer and hand tighten the supplied screws.



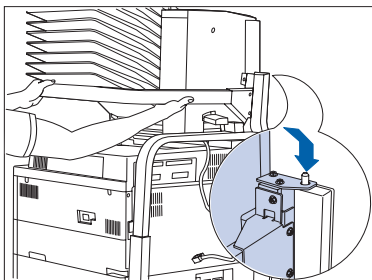
- 5** Insert the upper stand into the lower stands and snap into place.

**!** Be sure the upper stand is facing in the correct direction.



- 6** If the Face-up Bin is installed, remove it. Then, with two people, lower the Mailbox/Collator onto the printer.

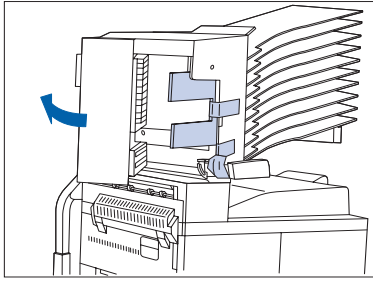
**!** Be sure to grasp the handle and support brace as shown above, and keep the connecting cord above the printer.



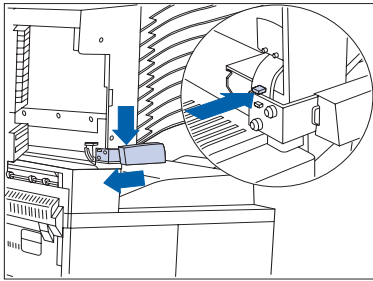
- 7** Align with the connecting pin as shown.

**!** Be sure that you have another person helping you perform this step.

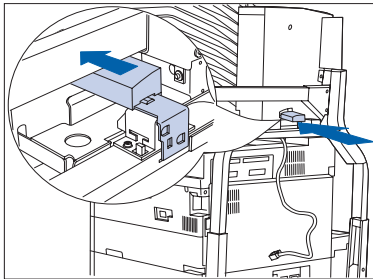
## 10-bin Mailbox/Collator



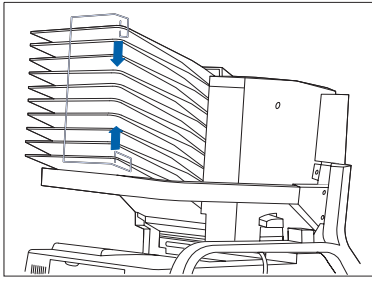
**8** Open Door D and remove all packing tape.



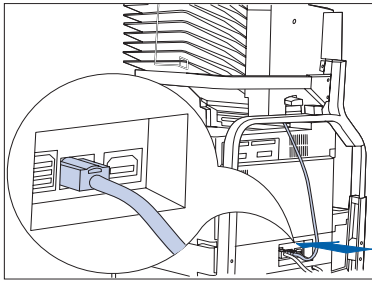
**9** Press the indicated button and remove the blue haze handle from the Mailbox/Collator by pushing the handle down and to the left.



**10** Insert the handle to the back of (behind) the Mailbox/Collator stopper as shown.



**11** Attach the paper stopper.



**12** Attach the Mailbox connector cord to the printer.

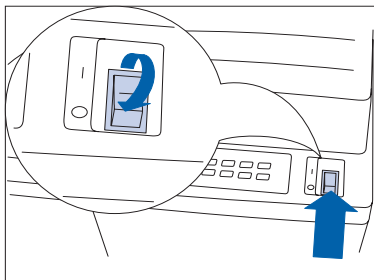
**13** Reattach the Face-up Bin (if it was removed).

**14** Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.

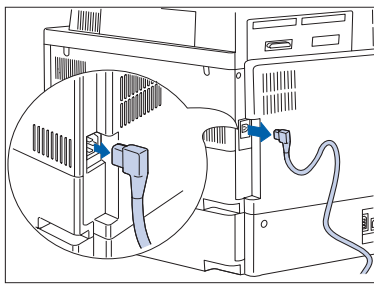
**15** Power ON the printer.

**16** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Mailbox/Collator appears in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under "Installed Options."

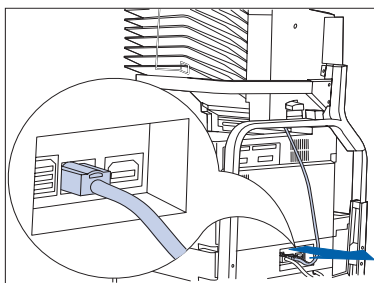
## Removing (Console Configuration)



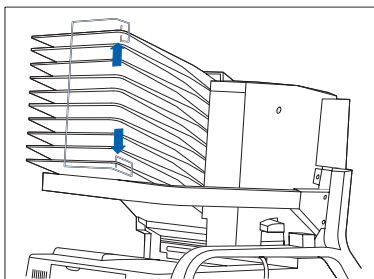
**1** Power OFF the printer.



**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

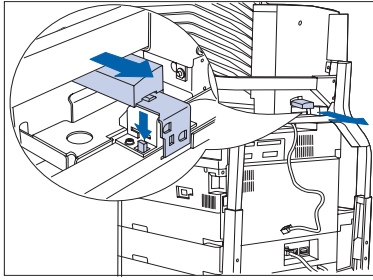


**3** Disconnect the Mailbox connector cord from the printer.

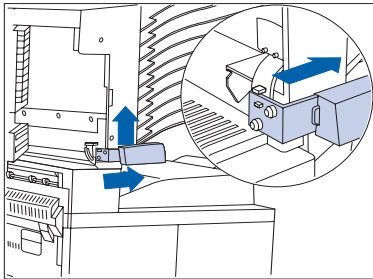


**4** Remove the paper stopper.

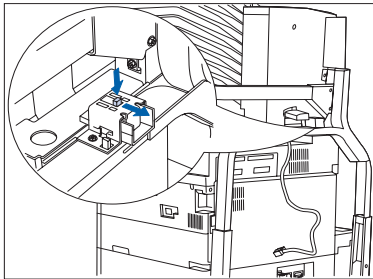




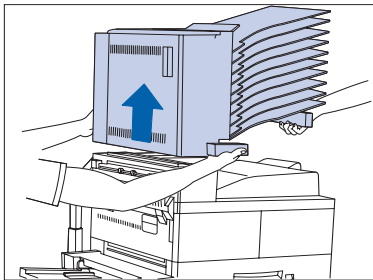
- 5 Remove the Mailbox/Collator handle from the Mailbox stopper by pressing the button down and pulling out the handle.



- 6 Open Door D. Insert the handle in its original position.



- 7 Press the button down and retract the Mailbox stopper.

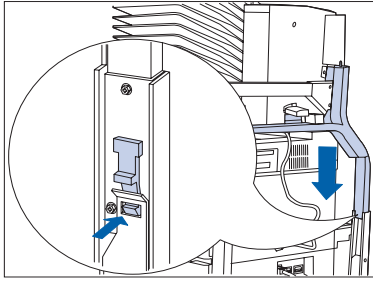


- 8 With two people, lift up the Mailbox and carry it away from the printer.

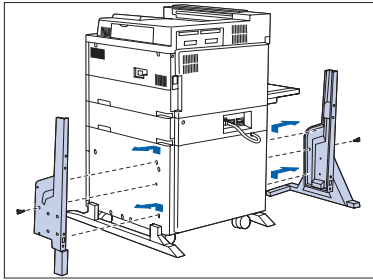


Be sure to grasp the handle and support brace as shown above.

## 10-bin Mailbox/Collator

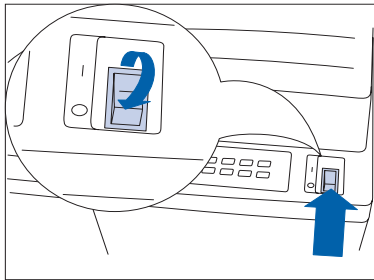


- 9 Press the stopper on either side of the upper stand to unlock it, then lift it from the lower stand to remove it.

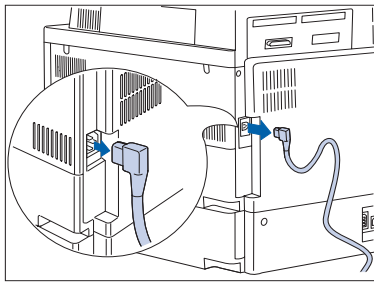


- 10 Loosen the two screws and remove the two lower stands.
- 11 Reattach the power cord to the printer and power ON the printer.
- 12 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Mailbox/Collator no longer appears in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under "Installed Options."

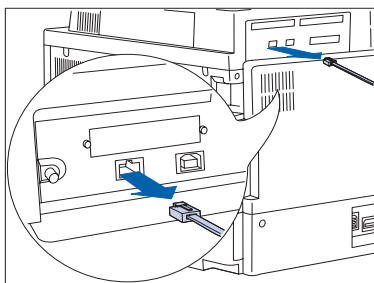
## Installing (Tabletop Configuration)



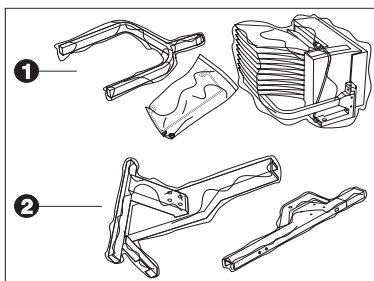
**1** Power OFF the printer.



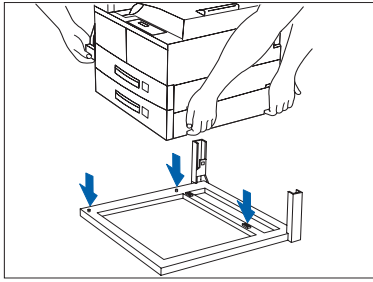
**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.



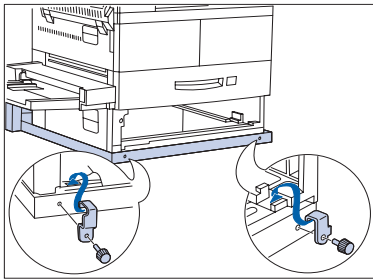
**3** Detach the interface cable.



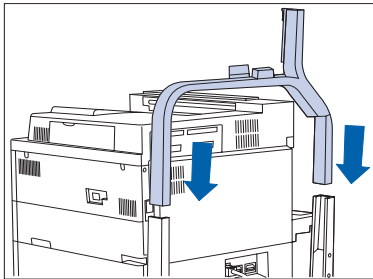
**4** Unpack the Mailbox from its two boxes (1 and 2), remove any tape, and gather its parts for installation.



- 5 With two people, lower the printer onto the Mailbox/Collator support base.



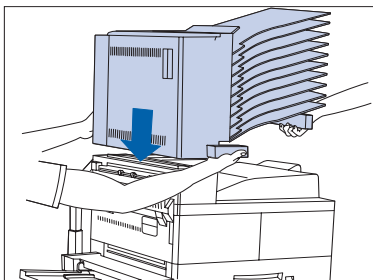
- 6 Remove Tray 2 and install the brackets. Secure with supplied screws.



- 7 Insert the upper stand into the lower stands and snap into place.



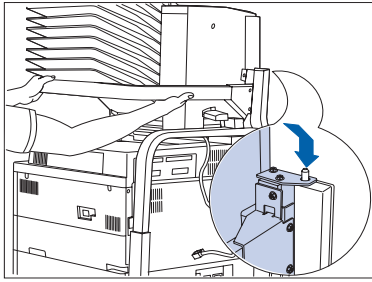
Be sure the upper stand is facing in the correct direction.



- 8 If the Face-up Bin is installed, remove it. Then, with two people, lower the Mailbox/Collator onto the printer.

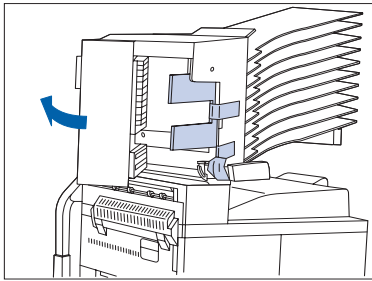


Be sure to grasp the handle and support brace as shown above, and keep the connecting cord above the printer.

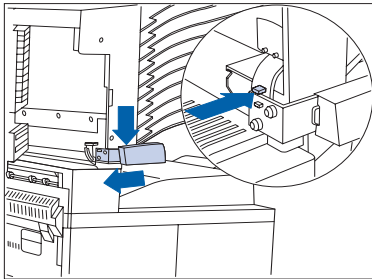


**9** Align with the connecting pin as shown.

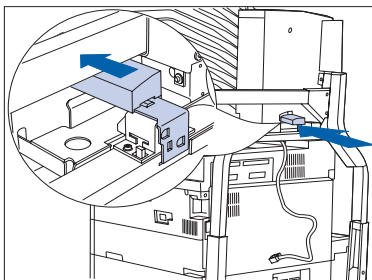
**!** Be sure that you have another person helping you perform this step.



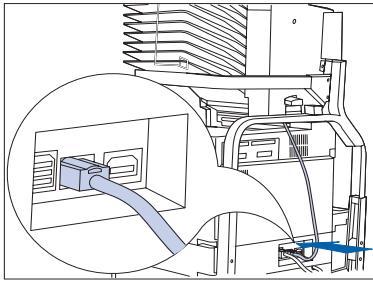
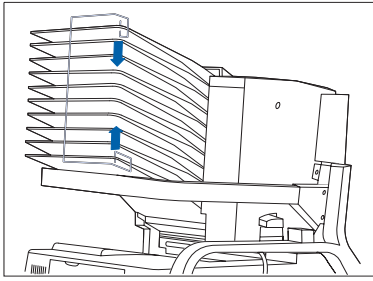
**10** Open Door D and remove all packing tape.



**11** Press the indicated button and remove the blue haze handle from the Mailbox/Collator by pushing the handle down and to the left.



**12** Insert the handle to the back of (behind) the Mailbox/Collator stopper as shown.



**13** Attach the paper stopper.

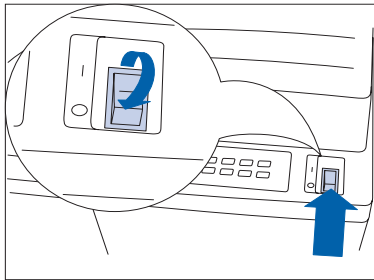
**14** Attach the Mailbox connector cord to the printer.

**15** Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.

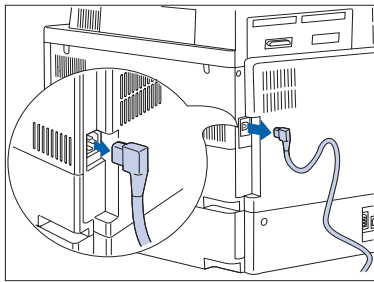
**16** Power ON the printer.

**17** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Mailbox/Collator appears in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under "Installed Options."

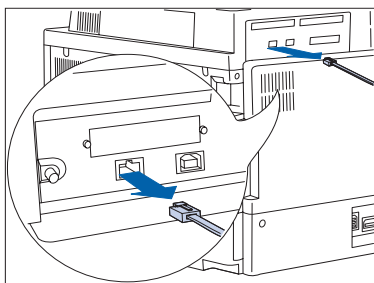
## Removing (Tabletop Configuration)



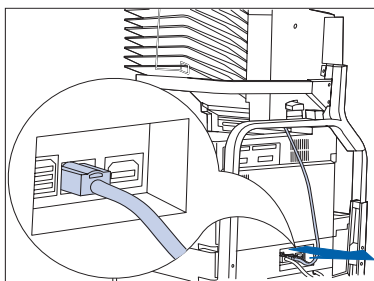
**1** Power OFF the printer.



**2** Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

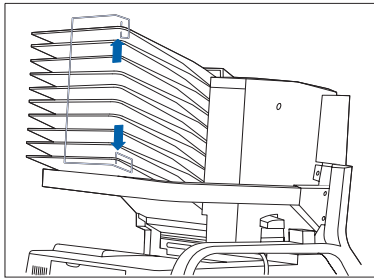


**3** Detach the interface cable.

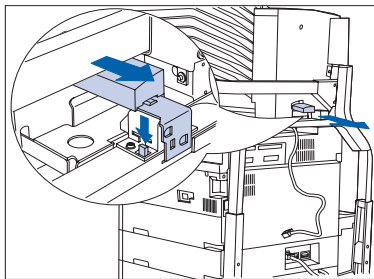


**4** Disconnect the Mailbox connector cord from the printer.

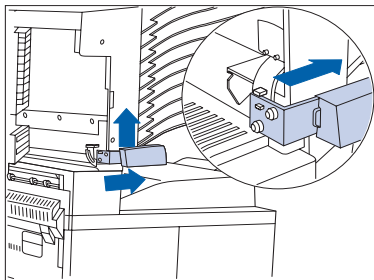
## 10-bin Mailbox/Collator



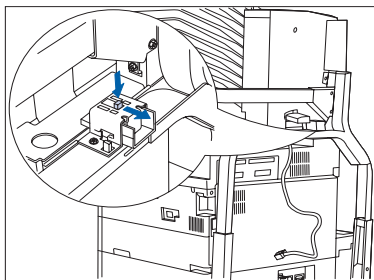
**5** Remove the paper stopper.



**6** Remove the Mailbox/Collator handle from the Mailbox stopper by pressing the button down and pulling out the handle.

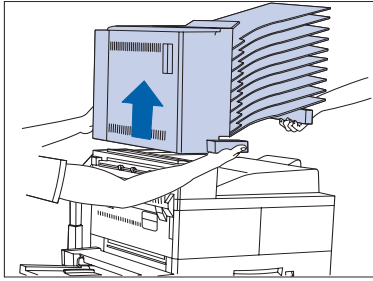


**7** Insert the handle in its original position.



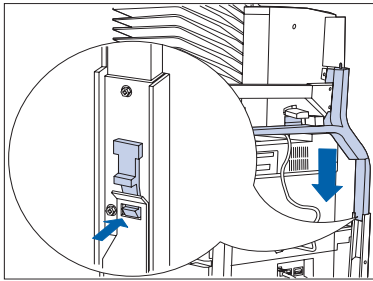
**8** Press the button down and retract the Mailbox stopper.



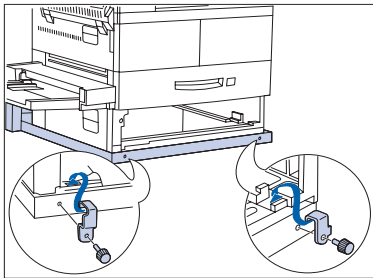


- 9 With two people, lift up the Mailbox and carry it away from the printer.

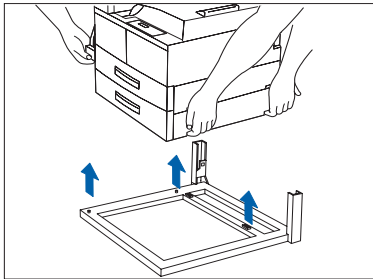
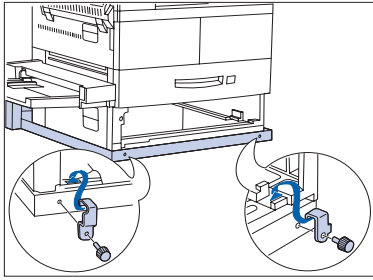
 Be sure to grasp the handle and support brace as shown above.



- 10 Press the stopper on either side of the upper stand to unlock it, then lift it from the lower stand to remove it.



- 11 Remove Tray 2 and remove the brackets. Then replace Tray 2.



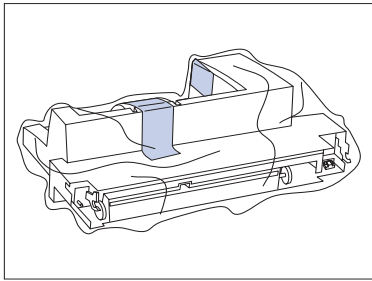
- 12** Remove Tray 2 and remove the brackets. Then replace Tray 2.
- 13** With two people, lift the printer up and away from the Mailbox/Collator support base. Set the printer down in its new location.
- 14** Reattach the GFI power cord and interface cable to the printer.
- 15** Power ON the printer.
- 16** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Mailbox/Collator no longer appears in the upper right section of the Configuration Sheet under “Installed Options.”

# 100 Envelope Feeder

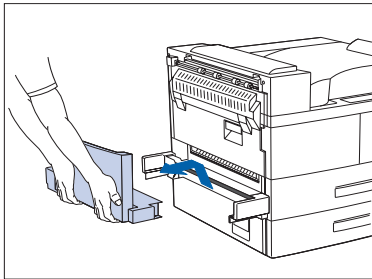
This section contains two sets of instructions:

- “Installing” (below)
- “Removing” (page 6-34)

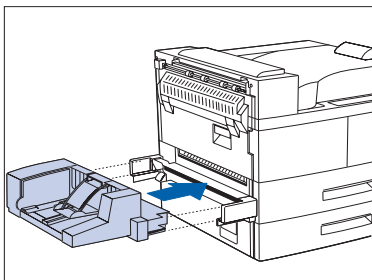
## Installing



- 1 Unpack the Envelope Feeder and remove packing tape.



- 2 Rotate the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder tray up and detach it from the printer by pulling it UP and OUT.



- 3 Hold the Envelope Feeder horizontally and insert it into the bracket where the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder was installed. Make sure it is securely attached.

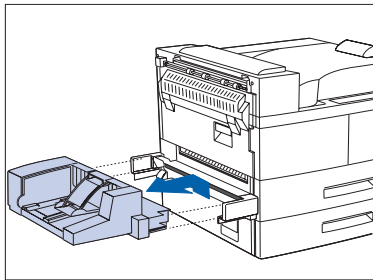
- 4 Power OFF and ON the printer.

- 5 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Envelope Size item appears in the Tray Menu section of the Configuration Sheet.

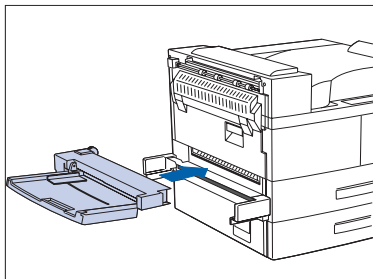
## Removing



*The printer should always have either the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder or the Envelope Feeder installed. Otherwise, internal moving parts of the printer will be exposed.*



- 1** Detach the Envelope Feeder from the printer by pulling it UP and OUT.



- 2** Hold the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder horizontally and insert it into the bracket where the Envelope Feeder was installed. Make sure it is securely attached.
- 3** Power OFF and ON the printer.
- 4** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the MBF Size item appears in the Tray Menu section of the Configuration Sheet.

# Hard Disk Drive

---

This section contains two sets of instructions:

- “Installing” (page 6-36)
- “Removing” (page 6-38)



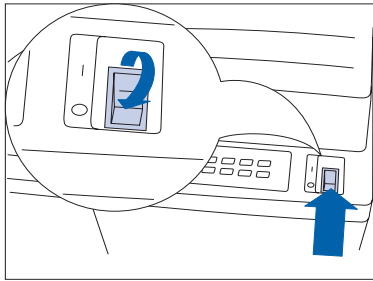
*The Hard Disk Drive and the printer’s controller board are sensitive to static electricity. Before installing or removing the drive, discharge static electricity from your body by touching something metal, such as the metal back plate on any device plugged into a grounded power source. If you walk around before finishing the procedure, again discharge any static electricity.*

*Never remove the printer controller board while the printer is plugged in.*

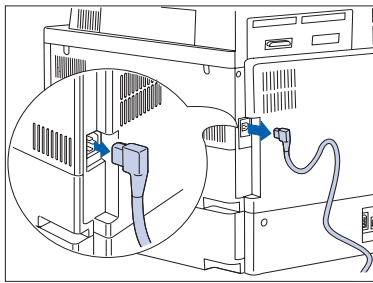
---

## Installing


Follow the procedure below to install the Hard Disk Drive.

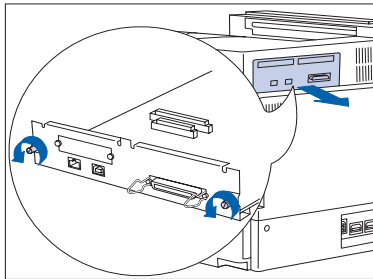


- 1 Power OFF the printer.

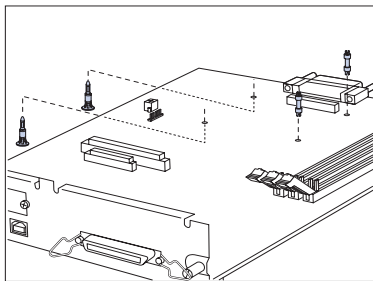


- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

 **Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**

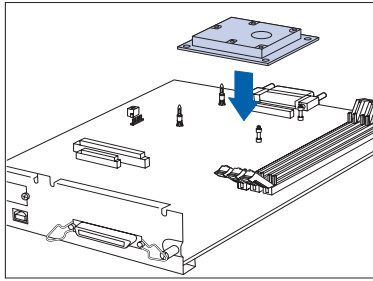


- 3 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board.

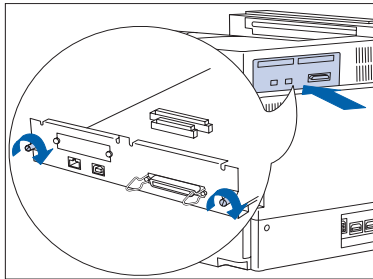


- 4 Insert the four support posts as follows:

- A Push the two long posts up through the controller board from the bottom.
- B Insert the two short posts into the holes in the top of the controller board by inserting them at a 45° angle and then rocking them forward.



- 5 Set the controller board down on a flat surface. Align the drive with the posts and connector, then push down on the drive until all four corners latch into place.

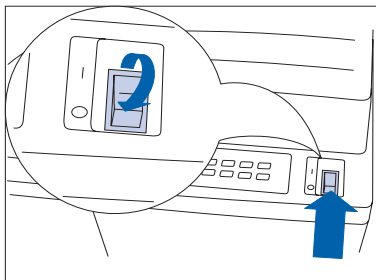


- 6 Replace the controller board and tighten the screws by hand.
- 7 Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.
- 8 Power ON the printer.
- 9 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Password Menu appears on the Configuration Sheet.

## Removing

Follow the procedure below to remove the Hard Disk Drive.

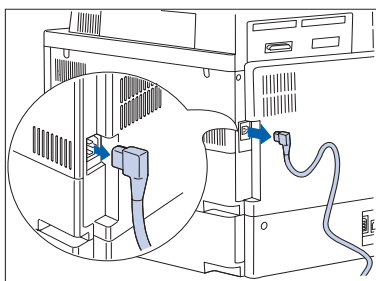
- 1 Power OFF the printer.



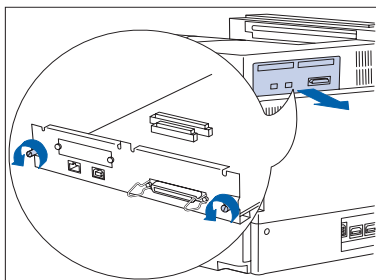
- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.



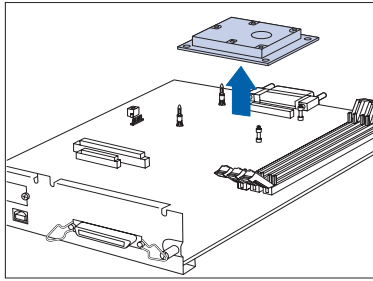
**Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**



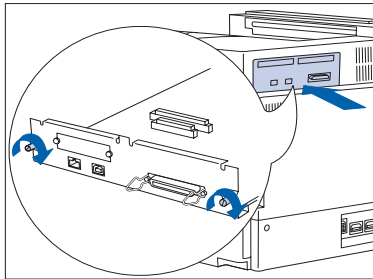
- 3 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board. Set it down on a flat surface.







- 4 Gently unlatch the drive from the posts, and lift it from the controller board.



- 5 Replace the controller board and tighten the screws by hand.
- 6 Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.
- 7 Power ON the printer.
- 8 Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the Password Menu no longer appears on the Configuration Sheet.

## Memory Modules

---

This section contains two sets of instructions:

- “Installing” (page 6-41)
- “Removing” (page 6-43)

These instructions are for installing either DRAM or Flash memory modules.



---

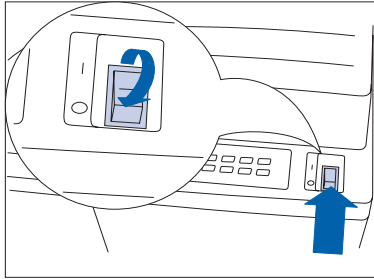
*Memory modules and the printer's controller board are sensitive to static electricity. Before installing or removing modules, discharge static electricity from your body by touching something metal, such as the metal back plate on any device plugged into a grounded power source. If you walk around before finishing the procedure, again discharge any static electricity.*

*Never remove the printer controller board while the printer is plugged in.*

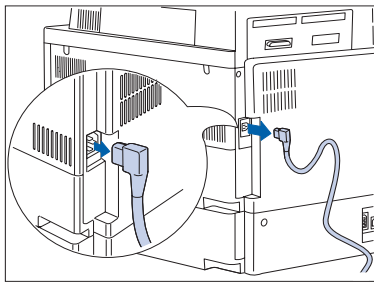
---

## Installing


Follow the procedure below to install memory.

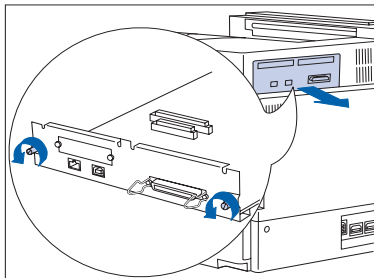


- 1 Power OFF the printer.



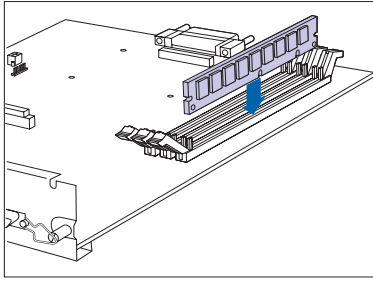
- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

 **Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**



- 3 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board. Set it down on a flat surface.

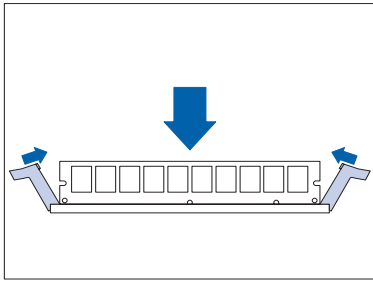
## Memory Modules



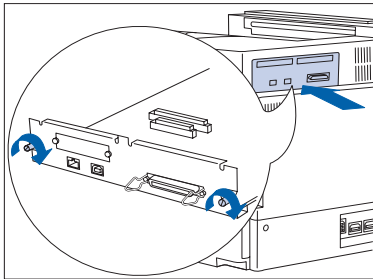
- 4** Insert the memory module into the slot at an angle.



*The memory module has a notch at one end to aid in proper placement. The memory module will fit only one way.*



- 5** Rotate the memory module into its upright position until it clicks into place.



- 6** Replace the controller board and tighten the screws by hand.

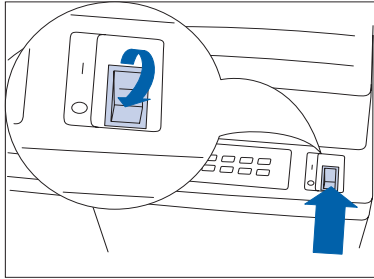
- 7** Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.

- 8** Power ON the printer.

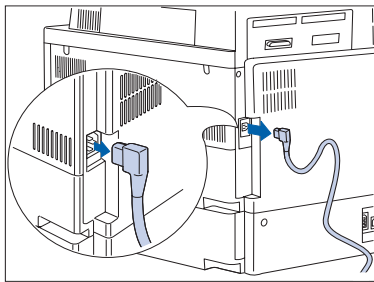
- 9** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the total system memory has been incremented in the upper left section of the Configuration Sheet.

## Removing


Follow the procedure below to remove a memory module.

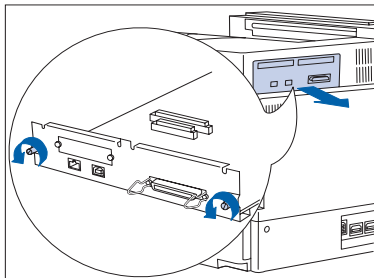


- 1 Power OFF the printer.



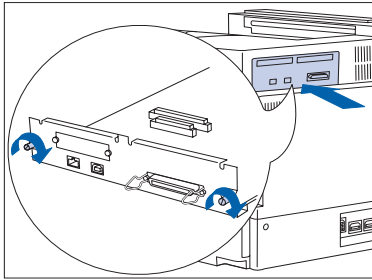
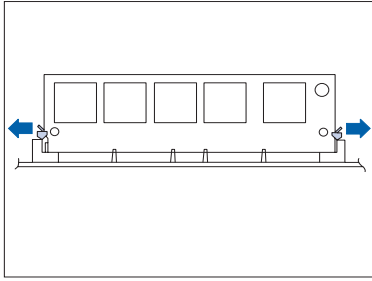
- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

 **Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**



- 3 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board. Set it down on a flat surface.

## Memory Modules



- 4** Carefully pull out the locking clips to release the memory module, then rotate it down 45° and lift it out of the socket.
- 5** Replace the controller board and tighten the screws by hand.
- 6** Reattach the GFI power cord to the printer.
- 7** Power ON the printer.
- 8** Print a Configuration Sheet (see page 3-91) and confirm that the total system memory has been decremented in the upper left section of the Configuration Sheet.

# Interface Cards

This section contains two sets of instructions:

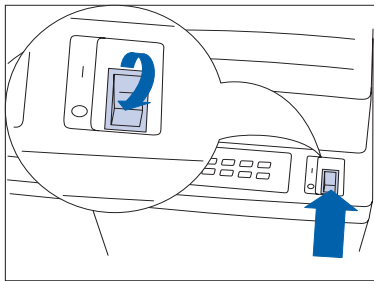
- “Installing” (page 6-45)
- “Removing” (page 6-49).



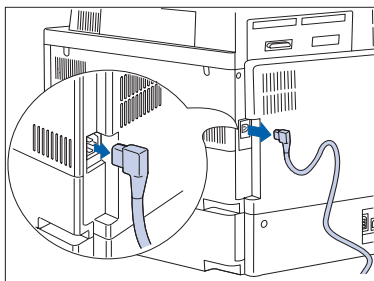
*These instructions apply to both the 10Base2 Ethernet and the Token Ring Interface Cards. The Token Ring Card is illustrated here.*

## Installing

Follow the procedure below to install an interface card. To install the card you will need either a Phillips head screwdriver or a hex-head nut driver.



- 1 Power OFF the printer.

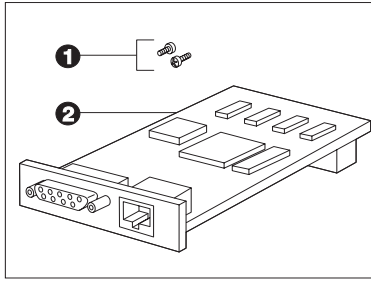


- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.

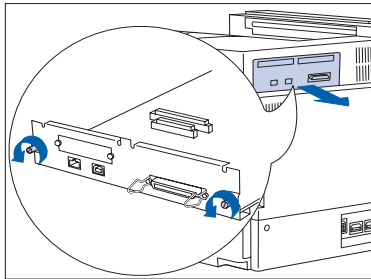


**Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**

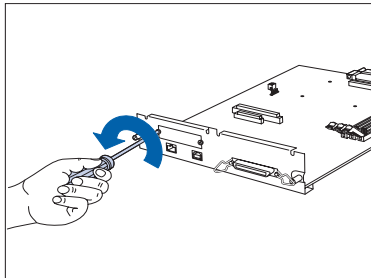
## Interface Cards



- 3 Unpack the interface kit. It should include these items:
  - (1) Two hex-head screws notched for a Phillips head screwdriver.
  - (2) The interface card.



- 4 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board. Set it on a flat surface.

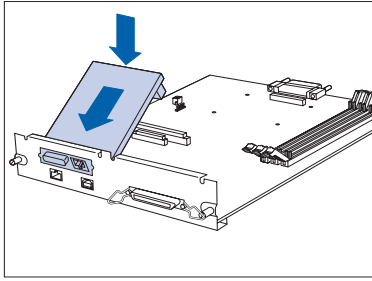


- 5 Use the screw driver/nut driver to remove the two screws holding the cover plate on the controller board as illustrated. Set the screws and the cover plate aside.



*These screws are the same as the screws packed with the interface card. You will not need the cover plate when the card is installed but you should keep it in a safe place in case you remove the card in the future.*

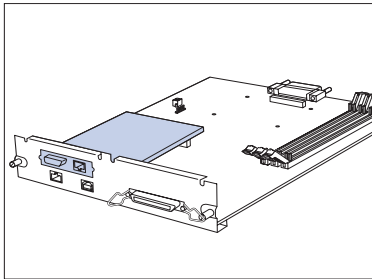




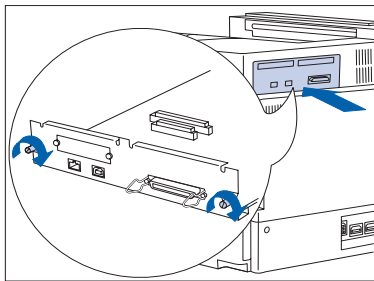
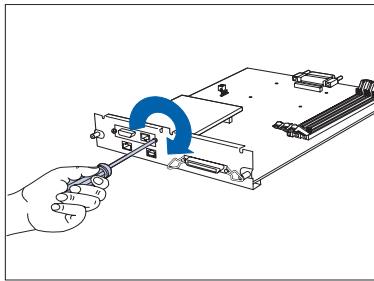
- 6** Insert the interface card into the controller board as illustrated.




*Align the pin connector on the rear underside of the card with the pin receptacle in the controller board. Align the screw receptacles on the front edge of the interface card with the screw slots on the front of the controller board.*



- 7** Gently push on the top rear of the card until the pin connector is firmly seated into the pin receptacle.



- 8 Align the two screw receptacles on the interface card with the slots in the front of the controller board and insert the screws. Tighten the screws using either a nut driver or Phillips head screwdriver.


 *Use either the screws that you removed from the controller board earlier, or the two screws that were packed with the interface card.*

- 9 Replace the controller board and tighten the thumbscrews by hand.

- 10 Re-attach the GFI power cord to the printer. Reattach any cables to printer ports.

- 11 Power ON the printer.

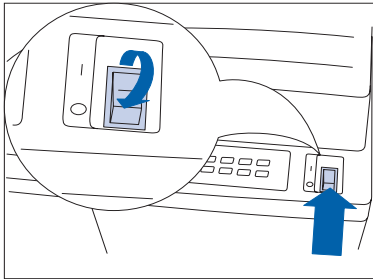
- 12 Print a Configuration Sheet. (page 3-91) and confirm that the proper Network Interface appears on the sheet.

 *If the proper interface does not appear on the Configuration Sheet or if an error message appears, perform steps 1 through 5 of the next section "Removing". Then reinstall the card and print another Configuration Sheet. If the proper interface still does not appear on the sheet or the error message is still present, contact your Customer Service Center.*

## Removing

Follow the procedure below to remove the interface card. To remove the card you will need either a Phillips head screwdriver or a hex head nut driver.

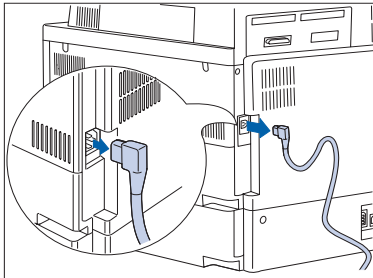
- 1 Power OFF the printer.



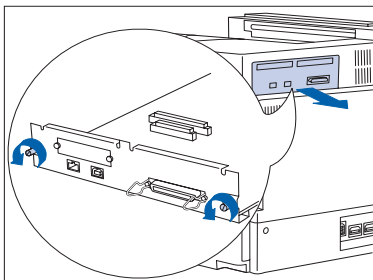
- 2 Disconnect the GFI power cord from the printer.



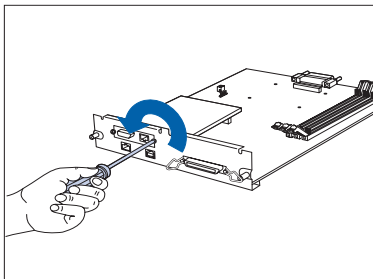
**Discharge any static electricity from your body before continuing with the next step.**



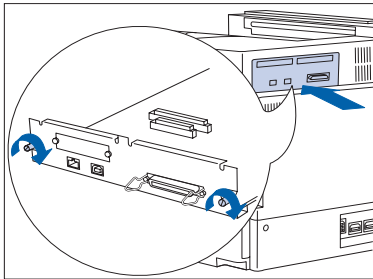
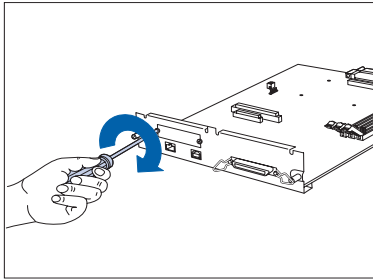
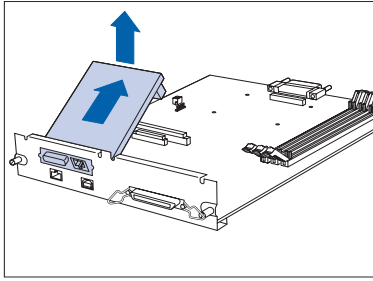
- 3 Loosen the thumbscrews and pull out the controller board. Set it on a flat surface.



- 4 Use the screw driver/nut driver to remove the two screws that hold the interface card in place as illustrated. Set the screws aside.



## Interface Cards



**5** Remove the interface card by gently lifting it away from the pin receptacle and pulling it away from the controller board.

**6** Re-install the cover plate on the controller board using the two screws.

**7** Replace the controller board and tighten the thumbscrews by hand.

**8** Re-attach the GFI power cord to the printer. Re-attach any cables to printer ports.

**9** Power ON the printer.

**10** Print a Configuration Sheet (page 3-91) and confirm that the proper network interface is now indicated on the Configuration Sheet.

# Finisher

---

## Installing

---



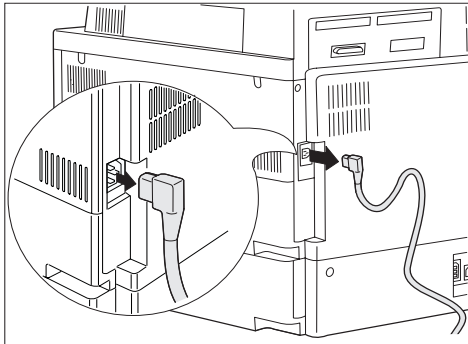
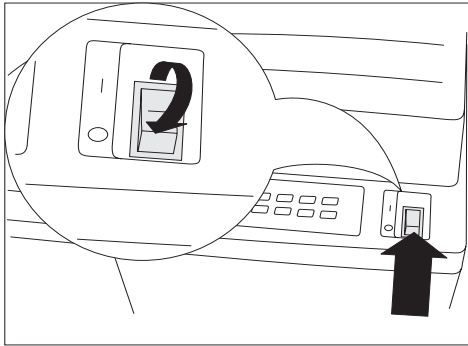
*If you are installing a printer at the same time as you are installing a finisher, install the printer and 2,500 Sheet Feeder first, using the instructions that came with them. Then install the finisher.*

---



*Installation of the finisher requires two people. Use caution when moving the printer console and finisher to ensure that they do not tip over. Be careful of metal plate edges when installing the finisher.*

---




1 Power OFF the printer.

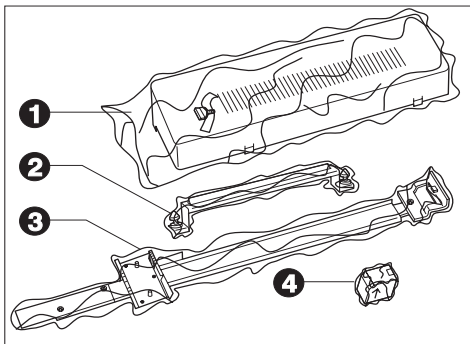
2 Disconnect the printer GFI power cord.

3 Unpack and remove the finisher from its box according to the instructions on the finisher box. Be sure to slide it off the bottom of the box.

 **This operation should be done by two people.**

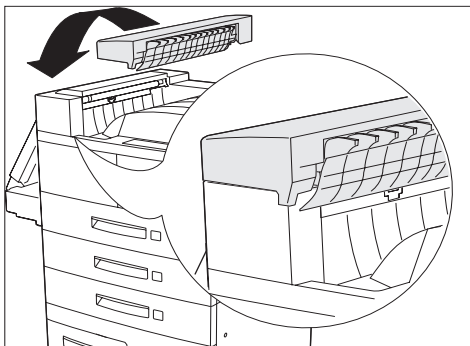
4 Remove any tape and packing material.

 **Save the carton and packing materials for later use in case you ever need to ship the finisher back to the dealer.**




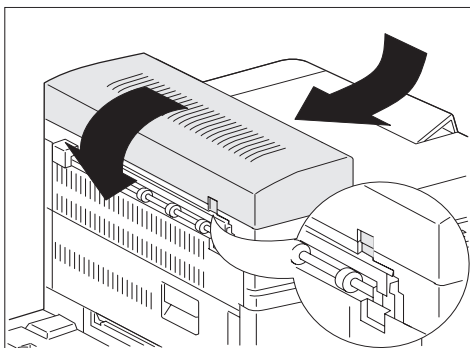
- 5 Unpack the installation kit. You should have these items:

- (1) Transport Cover and thumb screw
- (2) Emissions Bracket Assembly and two thumb screws
- (3) Guide Rail with docking brackets
- (4) Staple Cartridge



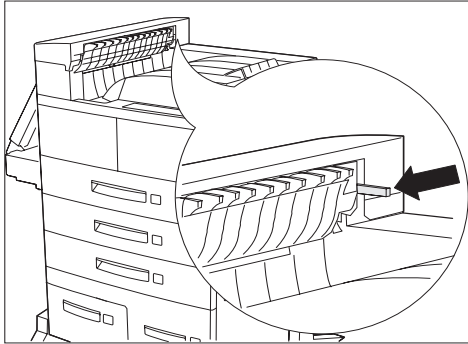
- 6 Face the front of the printer and place the Transport Cover on the top left side of the printer. Make sure the lip on the bottom right side of the transport cover is placed under the connecting edge of the printer.

 ***If your printer has the Duplex Module installed, you do not need to remove it in order to install the Transport Cover.***

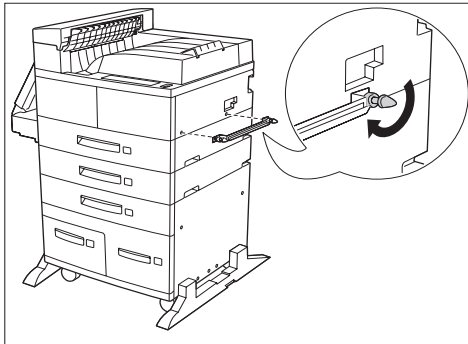


- 7 Align the tabs on the Transport Cover with the appropriate slots on the edge of the printer as shown.

Then gently pull the Transport Cover towards the left edge of the printer until it snaps into place.

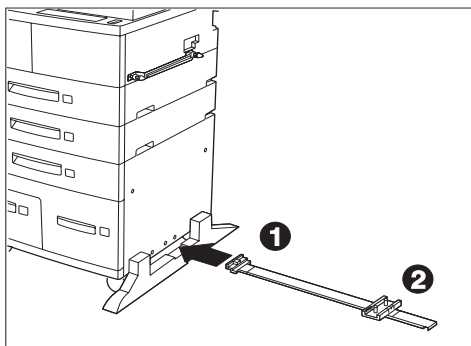


- 8 Make sure the black switch interlock is exposed and parallel to the floor as shown.



- 9 Make sure you install the Emissions Bracket Assembly with the “V” shaped edge of the bracket seal facing up. Attach the Emissions Bracket Assembly to the printer inserting the two thumb screws into the holes as shown and screwing them in.

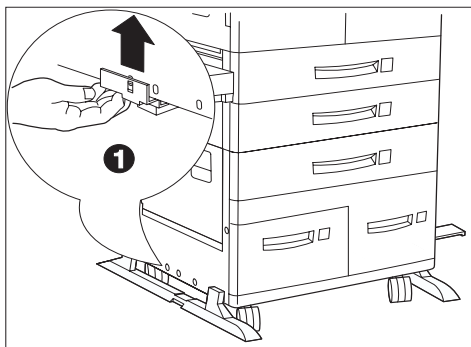




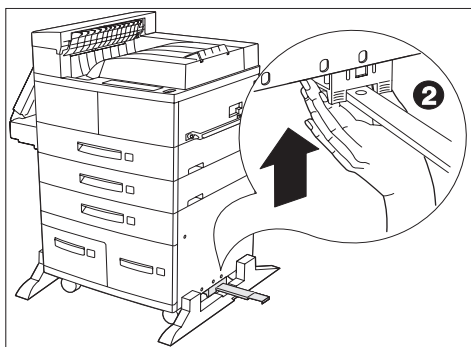
- 10** Pass the Guide Rail under the center of the printer from left to right as shown. The left side bracket (#1) should be at the left side of the printer, while the right side bracket (#2) should be at the right side of the printer.

Make sure the Guide Rail is parallel to the front of the printer.

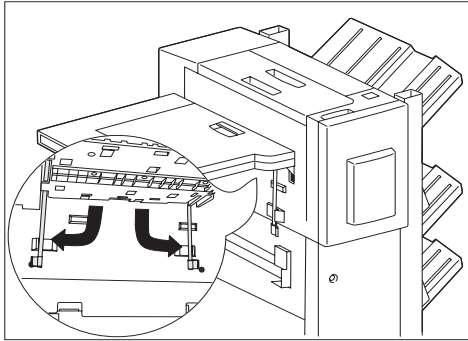
**!** Do not tip the printer when you attach the Guide Rail brackets.




- 11** At the left side of the printer, align the #1 bracket with the third hole from the front, lift it over the printer's plastic cover panel and hook its tab in the hole.

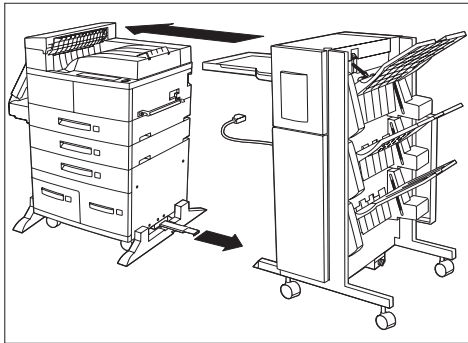


- 12** At the right side of the printer, align the #2 bracket with the third hole from the front and slide it upwards between the printer's plastic cover panel and frame until it snaps firmly into place.



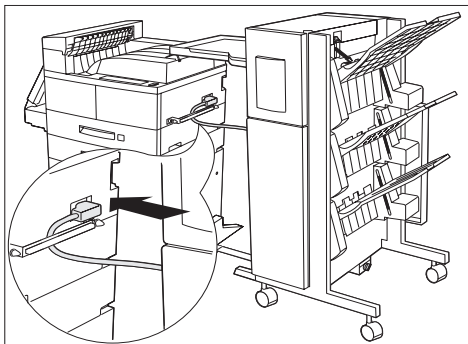
- 13 Hold the Paper Transport parallel to the ground and unfold the two brackets under the Paper Transport edge nearest to the printer by pulling on the green tabs. Rotate them into place by turning them down and to the side as shown and push them snugly against the retainers.

 Use caution when moving the finisher to ensure that it does not tip over.

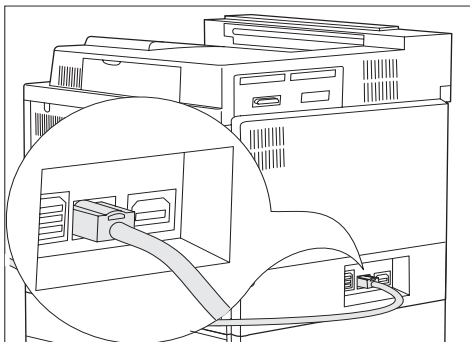


- 14 Slide the finisher towards the printer until its GFI power cord and connector cable can easily reach the printer easily.

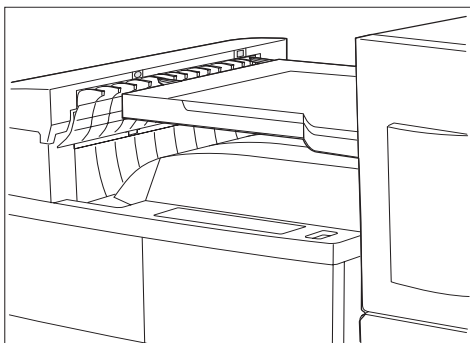
- 15 Fully extend the Guide Rail that is attached underneath the printer and align it with the Guide Rail slot under the finisher. Make sure the Guide Rail is completely inserted into the guide rail slot under the finisher and is aligned with the plate and hole underneath the right hand side of the finisher.



- 16 Pass the finisher GFI power cord behind the Emissions Bracket Assembly and plug it into the printer, as shown.



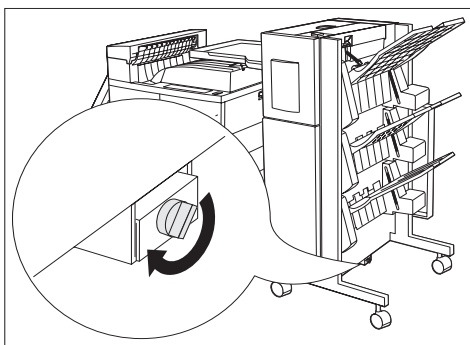
- 17** Attach the finisher connector cable to the rear of the printer as shown.



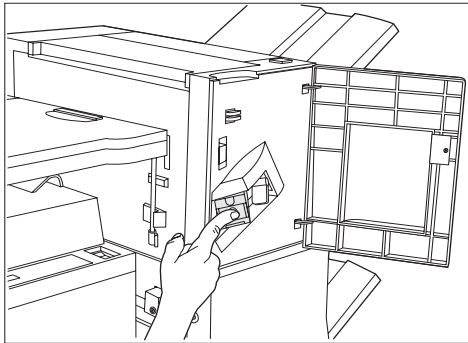
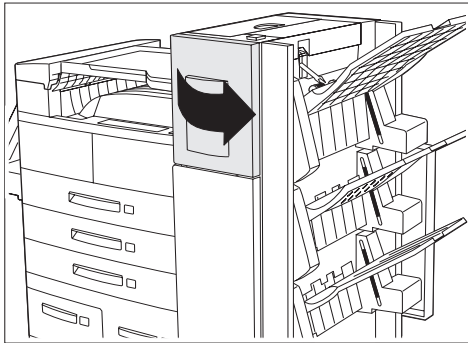
- 18** Align the finisher with the printer so they can be connected together. Align the pins on the left hand edge of the Paper Transport with the holes on the top edge of the Transport Cover.



**Be careful of metal plate edges at the base of the finisher as you complete the installation.**



- 19** Insert the thumb screw into the hole at the end of the Guide Rail at the base of the finisher and hand tighten it as shown.
- 20** Then push the finisher against the printer. Make sure the pins on the Paper Transport are firmly seated into the Transport Cover.
- 21** Lock the rear wheels on the finisher.




**22** Open the access door on the side of the finisher

**23** Slide the Staple Cartridge into the finisher until it snaps into place. Then close the access door.

**24** Reattach the printer's GFI power cord and power ON the printer.

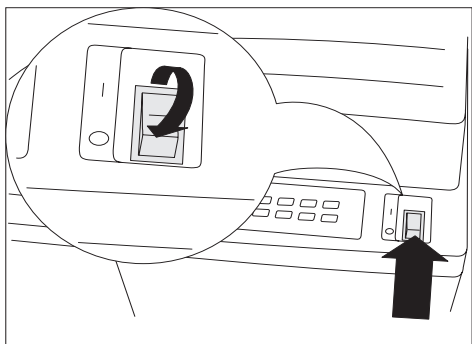
**25** Print a Configuration Sheet (see Chapter 1 of the Printer User Guide) and confirm that the finisher appears in the "Installed Options" section of the sheet.

 ***If the finisher does not appear on the Configuration Sheet, perform steps 1 through 5 of the next section, "Removing the Finisher," then reinstall the finisher and print another Configuration Sheet. If the finisher still does not appear on the sheet, contact your Customer Service Center.***

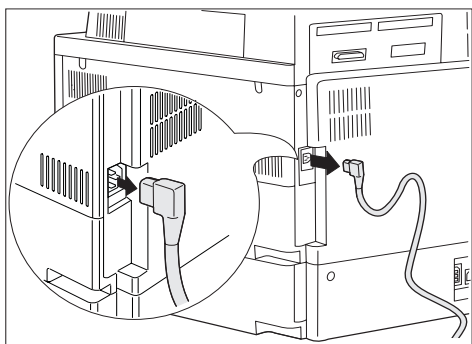
**26** Install the printer drivers from the CD.

## Removing

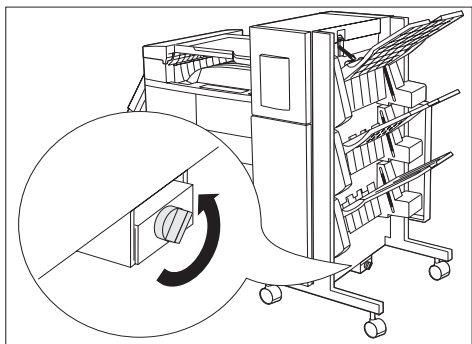
This section includes instructions for removing the finisher from the printer.



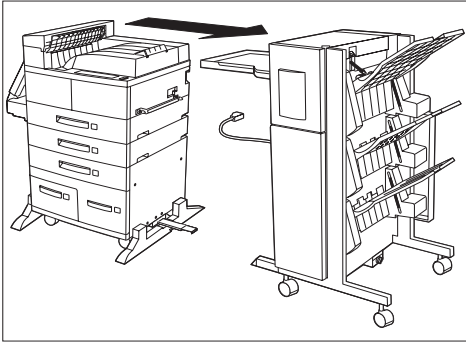
- 1 Power OFF the printer. Be sure to save all the loose parts from the finisher and the printer.



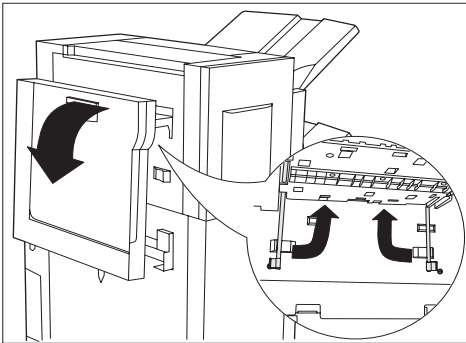
- 2 Disconnect the printer GFI power cord from the Printer and unplug the finisher connecting cable from the printer.



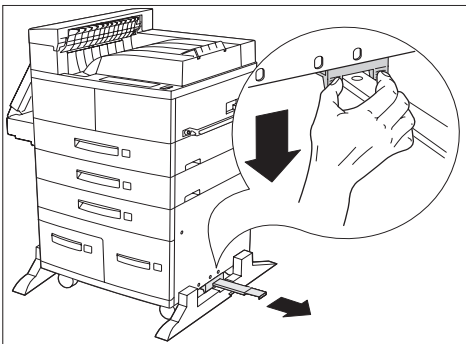
- 3 Remove the thumb screw from the base of the finisher.
- 4 Unlock the wheels on the finisher.



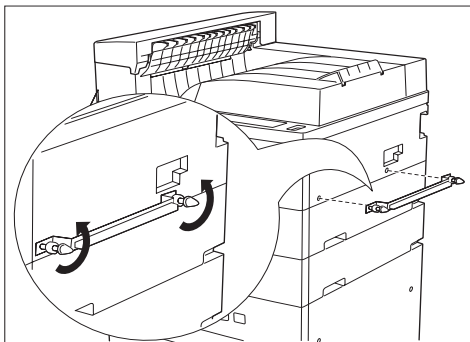
- 5 Remove the finisher GFI power cord from the printer and slowly pull the finisher away from the printer.



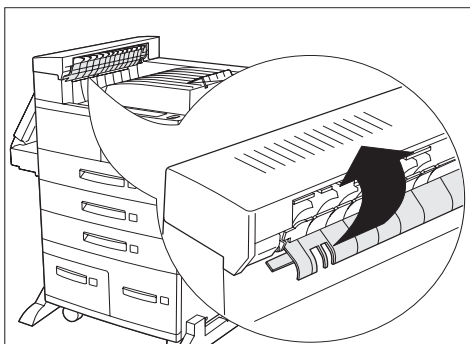
- 6 Release the two brackets under the Paper Transport and rotate them up into place at the edge of the Paper Transport.
- 7 Lower the Paper Transport so that it hangs against the side of the finisher.



- 8 Free the Guide Rail from the base of the printer console by pushing in the two tabs on the #2 bracket while pushing down on the Guide Rail.
- 9 Remove the Guide Rail from under the printer.



- 10** Remove the Emissions Bracket Assembly from the printer console by removing the two thumb screws.



- 11** Remove the Transport Cover. Begin by lifting the roller guard and rotating the Transport Cover away from the edge of the printer until the connecting tabs pull free.

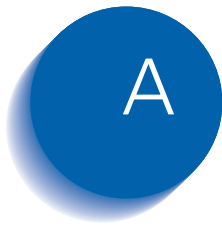
- 12** Reattach the GFI power cord to the Printer. Power ON the Printer.

- 13** Print a Configuration Sheet and confirm that the finisher no longer appears in the upper right section of the sheet.

 **If you plan to ship the finisher, remove the Staple Cartridge before shipping.**







## *Printer Specifications*

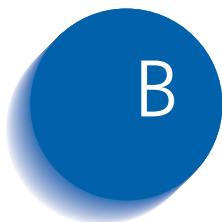
<b>Imaging Method</b>	Electro-Photography
<b>Exposure System</b>	Semiconduction laser beam (laser diode) scanning
<b>Image Resolution</b>	600 x 600 dpi 1200 x 1200 dpi image quality 300 x 300 dpi (PCL 5e only)
<b>Warm Up Time</b>	Less than 60 seconds after power on
<b>Continuous Print Speed</b>	32 ppm or 40 ppm
<b>Printable Area</b>	Full size of the paper
<b>Processor</b>	Motorola Power PC 603e (266 MHz)
<b>Maximum Monthly Duty Cycle</b>	Up to 150,000 impressions (for 32 ppm printer) or 200,000 impressions (for 40 ppm printer)
<b>Nominal Voltage</b>	90 - 132 V or 198 - 254 V
<b>Nominal Frequency</b>	50/60 Hz
<b>Power Consumption</b>	Less than 1180 W (110 V) or 1243 W (220 V) during operation Power Saver mode operational after specified period of not printing (15, 30, 60, 90, 120 minutes, or Off)
<b>Noise Level</b>	69.2 dBA during print per ISO 7779 (71.8 dBA with High Capacity Feeder, Finisher, or Mailbox) 42 dBA in standby per ISO 7779
<b>Temperature</b>	5 - 35°C (41-95° F) during operation
<b>Relative Humidity</b>	15% to 85% during operation
<b>Dimensions</b>	H x W x D: 486 x 642 x 523 mm (19 x 25.3 x 21")
<b>Weight</b>	110 V version: 45 kg (99 lbs.) without paper 220 V version: 48 kg (105 lbs.) without paper
<b>Memory Capacity</b>	192 MB

**Factory Provided Features**

- 2 adjustable trays (500 sheets each) standard (desktop configuration)
- 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder
- Face-down Bin (500 sheets)
- Face-up Bin (200 sheets)
- 32 Mbyte DRAM Memory
- PCL 5e emulation
- PCL 6 emulation
- PostScript 3
- Ethernet 10/100BaseT
- SNMP
- IEEE 1284 Parallel Interface
- USB Interface
- Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) software
- HTTP Web Server
- E-Mail Received by Printer (Job submission)
- E-Mail Sent by Printer (Event notification)
- Unidirectional Windows 3.x and Windows 95/98 drivers
- Internet Printer Administration Embedded HTTP Server
- CentreWare administration software
- Printer Map printer management software

**Available Options**

- Hard Disk Drive
- 16, 32, and 64 Mbyte DRAM DIMMs
- 8 and 16 Mbyte Flash ROM DIMMs
- 2,500 Sheet Feeder with one 500 sheet tray (adjustable) and two 1,000 sheet trays (Letter, Executive or A4 only)
- Duplex Module
- 10 Bin Mailbox/Collator
- 100 Envelope Feeder
- Finisher/Stapler
- Token Ring Interface Card
- 10Base2 Ethernet Interface Card
- RS-232C Serial Interface Card
- Bi-directional Windows 95/98 and Windows NT 4.0 PostScript drivers (over NetWare)



## *Unique Printer Commands*

<i>Overview</i> .....	<i>B-2</i>
<i>Paper Size Selection</i> .....	<i>B-3</i>
<i>Paper Type Selection</i> .....	<i>B-5</i>
<i>Input Tray Selection</i> .....	<i>B-6</i>
<i>Output Selection</i> .....	<i>B-7</i>
<i>PJL Commands</i> .....	<i>B-8</i>

## Overview

---

In addition to the standard PCL and PJJ printer commands, the manufacturer has added some unique settings for the printer in the following areas:

- Paper Size – see the section *“Paper Size Selection”* (page B-3).
- Paper Type – see the section *“Paper Type Selection”* (page B-5).
- Input Tray – see the section *“Input Tray Selection”* (page B-6).
- Output – see the section *“Output Selection”* (page B-7).
- Additional PJJ – see the section *“PJJ Commands”* (page B-8).

# Paper Size Selection

Table 2.1 lists the paper sizes supported by the printer along with the PCL commands for selecting them, the corresponding devices that support them, and the supported paper feed direction<sup>1</sup>.

**Table 2.1 Paper size selection and support**

Paper Size	Feed Direction	PCL 5e Command	PCL XL Enumeration for MediaSize	Supported Devices
<b>A3</b> 297x420mm	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l27A	eA3Paper (5)	Trays 1-3, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>A4</b> 210x297mm	LEF/SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l26A	eA4Paper (2)	Trays 1-5, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>A5</b> 148x210mm	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l25A	eA5Paper (16)	Tray 1, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>A6</b> 105x148mm	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l24A	eA6Paper (18)	MBF
<b>B4-JIS</b> 257x364mm	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l15A	eJB4Paper (10)	Trays 1-3, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>B5-JIS</b> 182x257mm	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l1A	eJB5Paper (11)	Trays 1-5, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>Statement</b> 5.5x8.5"	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l15A	eStatementPaper (19)	Tray 1, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>Executive</b> 7.25x10.5"	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l1A	eExecPaper (3)	Trays 1-5, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher

Table 2.1 Page 1 of 2

1. The character following the "&" in the command string is the lower case character "L."

**Table 2.1 Paper size selection and support** (continued)

Paper Size	Feed Direction	PCL 5e Command	PCL XL Enumeration for MediaSize	Supported Devices
<b>Letter</b> 8.5x11"	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l2A	eLetterPaper (0)	Trays 1-5, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>Folio</b> 8.5x13"	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l10A	eEuroLegalPaper (17)	Trays 1-3, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>Legal</b> 8.5x14"	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l3A	eLetterPaper (1)	Trays 1-3, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>Ledger</b> 11x17"	SEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l6A	eLedgerPaper (4)	Trays 1-3, MBF, Mailbox, Duplex, Finisher
<b>COM-10</b> 4.1x9.5"	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l81A	eCOM10Envelope (6)	Envelope Feeder, MBF
<b>Monarch</b> 3.8x7.5"	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l80A	eMonarchEnvelope (7)	Envelope Feeder, MBF
<b>C5</b> 162x229mm	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l91A	eC5Envelope (8)	Envelope Feeder, MBF
<b>DL</b> 110x220mm	LEF	E <sub>c</sub> &l90A	eDLEnvelope (9)	Envelope Feeder, MBF

Table 2.1 Page 2 of 2



*Paper sizes for Trays 1-5 are automatically sensed by the tray. The paper size for the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder must be loaded via the Control Panel.*



# Paper Type Selection

Table 2.2 lists the paper types supported by the printer along with the PCL commands for selecting them.

**Table 2.2** Paper type selection

Paper Type	PCL 5e Command <sup>1</sup>	PCL XL String Parameter for Media Type
Plain	E <sub>c</sub> &n6WdPlain	Plain
Preprinted	E <sub>c</sub> &n11WdPreprinted	Preprinted
Letterhead	E <sub>c</sub> &n11WdLetterhead	Letterhead
Transparency	E <sub>c</sub> &n13WdTransparency	Transparency
Prepunched	E <sub>c</sub> &n11WdPrepunched	Prepunched
Labels	E <sub>c</sub> &n7WdLabels	Labels
Bond	E <sub>c</sub> &n5WdBond	Bond
Recycled	E <sub>c</sub> &n9WdRecycled	Recycled
Color	E <sub>c</sub> &n6WdColor	Color
Card Stock	E <sub>c</sub> &n11WdCardStock	CardStock
User Type 1	E <sub>c</sub> &n10WdUserType 1	UserType 1
User Type 2	E <sub>c</sub> &n10WdUserType 2	UserType 2
User Type 3	E <sub>c</sub> &n10WdUserType 3	UserType 3
User Type 4	E <sub>c</sub> &n10WdUserType 4	UserType 4
User Type 5	E <sub>c</sub> &n10WdUserType 5	UserType 5

<sup>1</sup> The character following the "&" in the command string is the lower case character "L."



*The first 10 types listed in Table 2.2 are permanently available on the Control Panel. The last five types are user-defined (User Type x) and are only available if loaded from Network Administration software with a maximum of 24 characters each.*

# Input Tray Selection

Table 2.3 lists the input sources supported by the printer along with the PCL commands to select them and the source used if a selected option is not installed.

**Table 2.3** Input tray selection commands

Paper Source	PCL 5e Command <sup>1</sup>	PCL XL enumeration for MediaSource	Source Used If Option Not Installed
Tray 1	E <sub>c</sub> &l1H	eUpperCassette (4)	n/a
Tray 2	E <sub>c</sub> &l4H	eLowerCassette (5)	n/a
Tray 3	E <sub>c</sub> &l5H	eOptionalTray (130)	Tray 1
Tray 4	E <sub>c</sub> &l20H	eOptionalTray1 (128)	Tray 1
Tray 5	E <sub>c</sub> &l21H	eOptionalTray2 (129)	Tray 1
Manual (MBF <sup>2</sup> )	E <sub>c</sub> &l2H	eManualFeed (2)	Envelope Feeder
Manual Envelopes (MBF)	E <sub>c</sub> &l3H	eManualEnvelope (131)	Envelope Feeder
MBF (multi-sheet)	E <sub>c</sub> &l8H	eMultiPurposeTray (3)	Envelope Feeder
Envelope Feeder	E <sub>c</sub> &l6H or E <sub>c</sub> &l3H or E <sub>c</sub> &l2H	eEnvelopeTray (6)	MBF (multi-sheet mode)
Auto Select	E <sub>c</sub> &l7H	eAutoSelect (1)	n/a
Page Eject	E <sub>c</sub> &l0H	n/a	n/a
Unknown	E <sub>c</sub> &l xH <sup>3</sup>	eDefaultSource (0)	Tray 1

<sup>1</sup> The character following the "&" in the command string is the lower case character "L."

<sup>2</sup> The Control Panel MBF selection refers to the 50 Sheet Bypass Feeder.

<sup>3</sup> Parameter for paper source is invalid.

# Output Selection

Table 2.4 lists the output destinations supported by the printer along with the PCL commands and PJJ values to select them. (The values listed in the PJJ column are the settings associated with the PJJ “OUTBIN” variable.)

**Table 2.4** Output selection

Destination	PCL 5e Command <sup>1</sup>	PJJ (Used by PCL 5e and PCL XL) Value for Variable “OUTBIN”
Automatic (no request)	E <sub>c</sub> &l0G	
Top (Face-down Bin)	E <sub>c</sub> &l1G	FACEDOWN or UPPER
Face-Up Bin	E <sub>c</sub> &l2G	FACEUP or LOWER or OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN1
Bin 1 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l4G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN2
Bin 2 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l5G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN3
Bin 3 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l6G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN4
Bin 4 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l7G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN5
Bin 5 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l8G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN6
Bin 6 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l9G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN7
Bin 7 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l10G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN8
Bin 8 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l11G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN9
Bin 9 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l12G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN10
Bin 10 (Mailbox)	E <sub>c</sub> &l13G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN11
Sorter	E <sub>c</sub> &l99G	SORTER
Finisher Bin 1	E <sub>c</sub> &l4G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN2
Finisher Bin 2	E <sub>c</sub> &l5G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN3
Finisher Bin 3	E <sub>c</sub> &l6G	OPTIONALOUTPUTBIN4

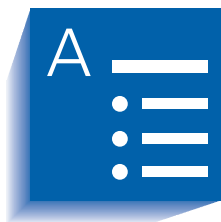
<sup>1</sup> The character following the “&” in the command string is the lower case character “L.”

# PjL Commands

The printer supports the standard set of PjL commands. Table lists the PjL extensions specific to the printer.

**Table 2.5 Printer specific PjL commands**

Function	PjL Command	Value Range
Start Secure Job	@PjL XSECUREJOB	n/a
Start Proof Job	@PjL XPROOFJOB	n/a
Job Password Assign	@PjL SET XJOBPASSWORD = integer	4-digit string (0-7)
Select Collated Sets	@PjL SET QTY = integer	0-999
Select an Emulation	@PjL ENTER LANGUAGE= " <i>language</i> "	PostScript, PCL, PCLXL
Hard Disk Drive File Delete	@PjL FSDELETE NAME = " <i>pathname</i> "	
Hard Disk Drive File Download	@PjL FSDOWNLOAD ...	
Hard Disk Drive Initialize	@PjL FSINIT VOLUME = " <i>pathname</i> "	
Hard Disk Drive Directory Create	@PjL FSMKDIR NAME = " <i>pathname</i> "	
Line Termination	@PjL SET XLINETERMINATION = value	ON, OFF
Page Size Continue (Page Policy)	@PjL SET PAGESIZECONTINUE = value	IGNORESIZE, IGNORETYPE, IGNORETYPEANDSIZE
Edge to Edge	@PjL SET XEDGETOEDGE = value	ON, OFF
Tray Sequence	@PjL SET XTRAYSEQUENCE = value	TRAYMBF, TRAYMBF1, TRAYMBF12, TRAY12,...
Novell PServer Name	@PjL DEFAULT XPSERVERNAME = " <i>name</i> "	0-47 characters
Novell PServer Primary Server	@PjL DEFAULT XPSERVERFSERVER = " <i>name</i> "	0-47 characters
Novell Server NDSMode	@PjL DEFAULT XNOVELLMODE = value	NDS, BEM, NDSBEM
Novell NDS Tree	@PjL DEFAULT XNDSTREE = " <i>tree name</i> "	0-63 characters
Novell NDS Context	@PjL DEFAULT XNDSCONTEXT = " <i>context</i> "	0-255 characters



# Index

## A

- All Jobs Delete • 1-19
- All Jobs Print • 1-18
- AppSocket Binary PS
  - Setting
    - In Ethernet Menu • 1-65
    - In Token Ring Menu • 1-79
- AppSocket Enable
  - Setting
    - In Ethernet Menu • 1-64
    - In Token Ring Menu • 1-78
- AppSocket PDL
  - Setting
    - In Ethernet Menu • 1-65
    - In Token Ring Menu • 1-79

## B

- Baud Rate
  - Setting • 1-54
- Bias Transfer Roll (BTR)
  - Also see* Maintenance Kit

- Bidirectional
  - Setting • 1-50
- Binary PS
  - Setting
    - In Parallel Menu • 1-49
    - In Serial Menu • 1-54
    - In USB Menu • 1-57

## C

- Cancel Job
  - Performing • 1-16
- CentreWare DP
  - Description • 2-2
  - Features • 2-2
  - Usage
    - Offsetting output • 1-115
- CentreWare Internet Services • 2-4
- Config Exec/B5
  - Setting • 1-45
- Config Legal/B4
  - Setting • 1-44
- Configuration Sheet
  - Printing • 1-97

## D

- Control Panel • 1-3 → 1-7
    - Display
      - Description • 1-4
      - Location on printer • 1-3
    - Indicator lights
      - Description • 1-5
      - Location on printer • 1-3
    - Keys
      - Description • 1-6 → 1-7
      - Location on printer • 1-3
    - Locking menus • 1-12
    - Menu system
      - See Menu
    - Messages • 5-5 → 5-28
  - Copies
    - Setting • 1-39
  - Custom Paper Sizes • 1-117 → 1-119
    - Configuring • 1-117
    - Examples • 1-119
  - Custom Size
    - Setting • 1-27
- ## D
- Default Gateway
    - Setting
      - In Ethernet Menu • 1-70
      - In Token Ring Menu • 1-84
  - Defaults
    - Setting • 1-46
  - Delete Jobs
    - Performing • 1-104
  - Demo Mode
    - Setting • 1-103
  - Demo Page
    - Printing • 1-97
  - Diagnostics
    - LED flash sequences • 5-30
  - Disk Directory
    - Printing • 1-99
  - Disk Format
    - Performing • 1-105
  - DLC PDL
    - Setting
      - In Ethernet Menu • 1-62
      - In Token Ring Menu • 1-76

- DLC/LLC Enable
    - Setting
      - In Ethernet Menu • 1-61
      - In Token Ring Menu • 1-75
  - Downloading
    - Fonts • 3-4
    - Forms • 3-4
    - Macros • 3-4
  - Draft Mode
    - Setting • 1-40
  - Drivers
    - PCL emulation
      - Description • 2-5
      - Features • 2-7
    - PostScript
      - Description • 2-6
      - Features • 2-7
    - Usage
      - Downloading fonts • 3-4
      - Downloading forms • 3-4
      - Downloading macros • 3-4
      - Setting duplex printing • 1-121
      - Setting output destination • 1-120
  - Duplex
    - Setting • 1-39
  - Duplex Module
    - Also see Duplex printing
    - Installing on printer • 6-9 → 6-13
    - Removing from printer • 6-14 → 6-17
  - Duplex printing
    - Also see Duplex Module
    - Control Panel settings • 1-122
    - Long edge feed
      - Landscape orientation • 1-122
      - Portrait orientation • 1-122
    - Paper sizes supported • 1-121
    - Short edge feed
      - Landscape orientation • 1-122
      - Portrait orientation • 1-122
- ## E
- Edge-to-Edge
    - Setting • 1-40
  - Envelope Size • 1-21
    - Setting • 1-21
  - Envelope Type
    - Setting • 1-21

## Envelopes

- Control Panel settings • 1-21, 1-46
- Duplex printing • 1-121

## ETalk Enable

- Setting • 1-66

## Ethernet Menu • 1-58 → 1-59

- Description • 1-58

## Items

- AppSocket Bin PS • 1-65
- AppSocket Enable • 1-64
- AppSocket PDL • 1-65
- Default Gateway • 1-70
- DLC PDL • 1-62
- DLC/LLC Enable • 1-61
- ETalk Enable • 1-66
- HTTP Enable • 1-66
- IP Address • 1-68
- IP Address Reset • 1-67
- LPR Banner • 1-60
- LPR Binary PS • 1-62
- LPR Enable • 1-60
- LPR PDL • 1-61
- NetBEUI Bin PS • 1-64
- NetBEUI Enable • 1-63
- NetBEUI PDL • 1-63
- Novell Enable • 1-89
- Port Timeout • 1-71
- Speed • 1-71
- Sub Net Mask • 1-69

## F

## Face-down Bin

- Setting as output destination • 1-43

## Face-up Bin

- Installing on Duplex Module • 6-13
- Removing from Duplex Module • 6-14
- Removing from printer • 6-9
- Setting as output destination • 1-43

## Factory Defaults

- Resetting to • 1-102

## Feedrolls

- Also see* Maintenance Kit

## Finisher • 1-123 → 1-135

- Adding staples • 4-19 → 4-20
- Bin Capacity • 1-127
- Installing on Printer • 6-51 → 6-58
- Job Offsetting • 1-133
- Output Timeout • 1-134
- Paper Output Exception Conditions • 1-135
- Removing from Printer • 6-59 → 6-61
- Stapling Positions • 1-128 → 1-132

## Flash Format

- Performing • 1-105

## Flash Memory

- Initializing • 3-2

## Flash memory

- Description • 3-2
- Usage
  - Downloading fonts • 3-4
  - Downloading forms • 3-4
  - Downloading macros • 3-4

## Flow Control

- Setting • 1-53

## Font Number

- Setting • 1-29

## Fonts

- Base printer • 2-9
- Downloading • 3-4
- PostScript • 2-10
- Printing a font list
  - PCL • 1-98
  - PostScript • 1-98

## Form Feed

- Forcing • 1-16

## Form Length

- Setting • 1-32

## Forms

- Downloading • 3-4

## Frame Type

- Setting • 1-91

## H

## H

### Hard Disk Drive

- Control Panel settings • 1-99, 1-104, 1-105
- Description • 3-2
- Initializing • 3-2
- Installing in printer • 6-36 → 6-37
- Removing from printer • 6-38 → 6-39
- Usage
  - Downloading fonts • 3-4
  - Downloading forms • 3-4
  - Downloading macros • 3-4
  - Printing secure jobs and proof jobs • 3-9 → 3-13

### Hex Mode

- Setting • 1-100

### HTTP Enable

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-66
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-80

## I

### Initialize Disk

- Performing • 1-104

### Installation

- Options • 6-3 → 6-44
  - Duplex Module • 6-9 → 6-13
  - Envelope Feeder • 6-33
  - Hard Disk Drive • 6-36 → 6-37
  - Interface Card • 6-45 → 6-48
  - Memory module • 6-41 → 6-42
  - 10-bin Mailbox/Collator (Console) • 6-18 → 6-21
  - 10-bin Mailbox/Collator (Tabletop) • 6-25 → 6-28
  - 2,500 Sheet Feeder • 6-4 → 6-6

### Interface Card

- Installing in printer • 6-45 → 6-48
- Removing from printer • 6-49 → 6-50

### Internet

- See CentreWare Internet Services

### IP Address

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-68
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-82

### IP Address Reset

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-67

- In Token Ring Menu • 1-81

## J

### Job Menu

- Description • 1-15
- Items
  - Cancel Job • 1-16
  - Form Feed • 1-16
  - Restart Printer • 1-16

### Job n Delete • 1-19

### Job n Print • 1-18

## L

### LAA

- Setting • 1-87

### Language

- Setting • 1-36

### Laser Print Cartridge

- Recycling • 4-3, 4-7
- Replacing • 4-2 → 4-8
  - With Duplex Module • 4-6 → 4-8
  - Without Duplex Module • 4-3 → 4-5

### LEDs

- Diagnostics • 5-30

### Line Terminat.

- Setting • 1-33

### LPR Banner

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-60
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-74

### LPR Binary PS

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-62
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-76

### LPR Enable

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-60
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-74

### LPR PDL

- Setting
  - In Ethernet Menu • 1-61
  - In Token Ring Menu • 1-75



## M

## Macros

- Downloading • 3-4

## Mailbox

- See 10-bin Mailbox Collator

## Mailbox Mail Send and Receive • 2-4

## Main Menu

- Description • 1-13

## Maintenance Kit

- Bias Transfer Roll • 4-9

- Replacing • 4-13 → 4-14

- Description • 4-9

- Feedrolls • 4-9

- Replacing • 4-15 → 4-18

- Fuser Cartridge • 4-9

- Replacing • 4-10 → 4-13

- Installing in printer • 4-9 → 4-18

- Bias Transfer Roll • 4-13 → 4-14

- Feedrolls • 4-15 → 4-18

- Fuser Cartridge • 4-10 → 4-13

## MBF Size

- Setting • 1-22

## MBF Type

- Setting • 1-22

## Memory modules

- Installing in printer • 6-41 → 6-42

- Removing from printer • 6-43 → 6-44

## Menu Map

- Printing • 1-98

## Menus

- Ethernet Menu

- See Ethernet Menu

- Job Menu

- See Job Menu

- Locking • 1-12

- Main Menu

- See Main Menu

- Novell Menu

- See Novell Menu

- Parallel Menu

- See Parallel Menu

- Password Menu

- See Password Menu

- PCL Menu

- See PCL Menu

- Print Menu

- See Print Menu

- Reset Menu

- See Reset Menu

- Serial Menu

- See Serial Menu

- Setting options • 1-10 → 1-11

- System Menu

- See System Menu

- Token Ring Menu

- See Token Ring Menu

- Tray Menu

- See Tray Menu

- USB Menu

- See USB Menu

## N

## NDS Context

- Setting • 1-95

## NDS Tree

- Setting • 1-94

## NetBEUI Binary PS

- Setting

- In Ethernet Menu • 1-64

- In Token Ring Menu • 1-78

## NetBEUI Enable

- Setting

- In Ethernet Menu • 1-63

- In Token Ring Menu • 1-77

## NetBEUI PDL

- Setting

- In Ethernet Menu • 1-63

- In Token Ring Menu • 1-77

## Network Defaults

- Resetting to • 1-102

## Novell Binary PS

- Setting

- In Novell Menu • 1-90

## Novell Enable

- Setting • 1-89

## Novell Menu • 1-88

- Description • 1-88

- Items

- Frame Type • 1-91

- NDS Context • 1-95

- NDS Tree • 1-94

- Novell Binary PS • 1-90

- Novell Mode • 1-90

## O

- Novell PDL • 1-89
- Polling Interval • 1-91
- Primary Server • 1-93
- PServer Name • 1-92

- Novell Mode
  - Setting • 1-90

- Novell PDL
  - Setting • 1-89

## O

- Options
  - Installing • 6-1 → 6-61
  - Removing from printer • 6-1 → 6-61

- Orientation
  - Setting • 1-32

- Output Destination
  - Setting • 1-43

- Output Offset
  - Setting • 1-42

- Output Timeout
  - Setting • 1-42

## P

- Page Policy
  - Setting • 1-38

- Page Timeout
  - Setting • 1-38

- Paper
  - Jam removal
    - See Paper jams
  - Jams
    - See Paper jams
  - Offsetting output • 1-115

- Paper jams • 5-32 → 5-42
  - Causes • 5-32
  - Clearing • 5-32 → 5-42
    - From Area A (with Duplex Module) • 5-35 → 5-36
    - From Area A (without Duplex Module) • 5-33 → 5-34
    - From Area B • 5-37
    - From Area C • 5-37
    - From Area D • 5-38
    - From Duplex Module • 5-42
    - From Tray 5 • 5-41

- Paper Size
  - Setting • 1-37

- Paper Type
  - Setting • 1-37

- Parallel Menu • 1-47
  - Description • 1-47
  - Items
    - Bidirectional • 1-50
    - Binary PS • 1-49
    - Parallel PDL • 1-49
    - Port Enable • 1-48
    - Port Timeout • 1-48

- Parallel PDL
  - Setting • 1-49

- Password Menu • 1-17
  - Description • 1-17
  - Items
    - All Jobs Delete • 1-19
    - All Jobs Print • 1-18
    - Job n Delete • 1-19
    - Job n Print • 1-18

- PCL commands
  - Input tray • B-6
  - Output destination • B-7
  - Paper size • B-3
  - Paper type • B-5

- PCL emulation
  - Drivers
    - Description • 2-5

- PCL Font List
  - Printing • 1-98

- PCL Menu • 1-28
  - Description • 1-28
  - Items
    - Font Number • 1-29
    - Form Length • 1-32
    - Line Terminat. • 1-33
    - Orientation • 1-32
    - Pitch • 1-30
    - Point Size • 1-30
    - Symbol Set • 1-31

- Pitch
  - Setting • 1-30

- PJL commands • B-8

- Point Size
  - Setting • 1-30

- Polling Interval
    - Setting • 1-91
  - Port Enable
    - Setting
      - In Parallel Menu • 1-48
      - In Serial Menu • 1-52
      - In USB Menu • 1-56
  - Port Timeout
    - Setting
      - In Ethernet Menu • 1-71
      - In Parallel Menu • 1-48
      - In Serial Menu • 1-52
      - In Token Ring Menu • 1-85
      - In USB Menu • 1-56
  - PostScript
    - Drivers
      - Description • 2-6
    - Fonts • 2-10
    - Setting AppSocket Binary mode • 1-65, 1-79
    - Setting LPR Binary mode • 1-62, 1-76
    - Setting NetBEUI Binary mode • 1-64, 1-78
    - Setting Novell Binary mode • 1-90
  - PostScript Font List
    - Printing • 1-98
  - Power Saver
    - Setting • 1-45
  - Primary Server
    - Setting • 1-93
  - Print • 1-8
  - Print Errors
    - Setting • 1-44
  - Print Menu • 1-96
    - Description • 1-96
    - Items
      - Configuration Sheet • 1-97
      - Disk Directory • 1-99
      - Hex Mode • 1-100
      - Menu Map • 1-98
      - PCL Font List • 1-98
      - PostScript Font List • 1-98
      - Restart Printer • 1-100
      - Test Print • 1-99
  - Print quality problems • 5-43 → 5-50
  - Printer
    - Drivers
      - See Drivers*
    - Maintenance • 4-1 → 4-23
      - Also see Maintenance Kit*
      - Cleaning the printer • 4-21 → 4-23
    - Specifications • A-2 → A-4
    - Troubleshooting
      - See Troubleshooting*
    - Unique printer commands
      - See PCL commands, PJJ commands*
  - Printer drivers
    - See Drivers*
  - Proof jobs
    - Creating • 3-11 → 3-12
  - PServer Name
    - Setting • 1-92
- ## R
- Reset Menu • 1-101
    - Description • 1-101
    - Items
      - Delete Jobs • 1-104
      - Demo Mode • 1-103
      - Disk Format • 1-105
      - Factory Defaults • 1-102
      - Flash Format • 1-105
      - Initialize Disk • 1-104
      - Network Defaults • 1-102
  - Resolution
    - Setting • 1-41
  - Restart Printer
    - Initiating • 1-16
    - Setting • 1-100
- ## S
- Secure jobs
    - Creating • 3-9 → 3-10
  - Serial Menu • 1-51
    - Description • 1-51
    - Items
      - Baud Rate • 1-54
      - Binary PS • 1-54
      - Flow Control • 1-53
      - Port Enable • 1-52
      - Port Timeout • 1-52
      - Serial PDL • 1-53
  - Serial PDL
    - Setting • 1-53

## T

Source Routing  
Setting • 1-86

Speed  
Setting  
In Ethernet Menu • 1-71  
In Token Ring Menu • 1-86

Staple Mode  
Setting • 1-43

Sub Net Mask  
Setting  
In Ethernet Menu • 1-69  
In Token Ring Menu • 1-83

Symbol Set  
Setting • 1-31

System Menu  
Description • 1-34  
Items  
Config Exec/B5 • 1-45  
Config Legal/B4 • 1-44  
Copies • 1-39  
Defaults • 1-46  
Draft Mode • 1-40  
Duplex • 1-39  
Edge-to-Edge • 1-40  
Language • 1-36  
Output Destination • 1-43  
Output Offset • 1-42  
Output Timeout • 1-42  
Page Policy • 1-38  
Page Timeout • 1-38  
Paper Size • 1-37  
Paper Type • 1-37  
Power Saver • 1-45  
Print Errors • 1-44  
Resolution • 1-41  
Staple Mode • 1-43  
XIE • 1-41

## T

Test Menu  
Items  
Demo Page • 1-97

Test Print  
Printing • 1-99

Token Ring  
Description • 1-72

Token Ring Menu • 1-72 → 1-73  
Items  
AppSocket Binary PS • 1-79  
AppSocket Enable • 1-78  
AppSocket PDL • 1-79  
Default Gateway • 1-84  
DLC PDL • 1-76  
DLC/LLC Enable • 1-75  
HTTP Enable • 1-80  
IP Address • 1-82  
IP Address Reset • 1-81  
LAA • 1-87  
LPR Banner • 1-74  
LPR Binary PS • 1-76  
LPR Enable • 1-74  
LPR PDL • 1-75  
NetBEUI Binary PS • 1-78  
NetBEUI Enable • 1-77  
NetBEUI PDL • 1-77  
Port Timeout • 1-85  
Source Routing • 1-86  
Speed • 1-86  
Sub Net Mask • 1-83  
TTalk Enable • 1-80

Toner  
*Also see* Laser Print Cartridge  
Reducing usage of • 1-40

Tray Menu • 1-20  
Description • 1-20  
Items  
Custom Size • 1-27  
Envelope Size • 1-21  
Envelope Type • 1-21  
MBF Size • 1-22  
MBF Type • 1-22  
Tray Sequence • 1-26  
Tray 1 Type • 1-23  
Tray 2 Type • 1-23  
Tray 3 Type • 1-24  
Tray 4 Type • 1-24  
Tray 5 Type • 1-25

Tray Sequence  
*Also see* Tray switching  
Setting • 1-26  
Usage examples • 1-113  
Usage rules • 1-111

- Tray switching
  - Also see* Tray Sequence
  - Description • 1-106 → 1-114
  - Examples • 1-113
  - Paper handling exception conditions • 1-109 → 1-110
  - Paper size/type mismatch • 1-114
  - Rules • 1-111
- Tray 1 Type
  - Setting • 1-23
- Tray 2 Type
  - Setting • 1-23
- Tray 3 Type
  - Setting • 1-24
- Tray 4 Type
  - Setting • 1-24
- Tray 5 Type
  - Setting • 1-25
- Troubleshooting
  - Control Panel messages • 5-5 → 5-28
  - Paper jams • 5-32 → 5-42
  - Print quality problems • 5-43 → 5-50
  - Printer operation problems • 5-2 → 5-4
- TTalk Enable
  - Setting • 1-80

## U

- USB
  - Setting Binary mode • 1-57
- USB Menu • 1-55
  - Description • 1-55
  - Items
    - Binary PS • 1-57
    - Port Enable • 1-56
    - Port Timeout • 1-56
    - USB PDL • 1-57
- USB PDL
  - Setting • 1-57

## X

- XIE
  - Setting • 1-41

## Numerics

- 10-bin Mailbox/Collator
  - Bin capacity • 1-120
  - Bin selection • 1-43
  - Control Panel settings • 1-43
  - Installing on printer
    - Console configuration • 6-18 → 6-21
    - Tabletop configuration • 6-25 → 6-28
  - Removing from printer
    - Console configuration • 6-22 → 6-24
    - Tabletop configuration • 6-29 → 6-32
  - Setting as output destination • 1-43
  - Using • 1-120
- 100 Envelope Feeder
  - Control Panel settings • 1-21
  - Installing on printer • 6-33
  - Removing from printer • 6-34
- 2,500 Sheet Feeder
  - Installing on printer • 6-4 → 6-6
  - Removing from printer • 6-7 → 6-8
- 3-Bin Finisher/Stapler
  - Also see* Finisher